SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠkodaRoomster
OWNER'S MANUAL

Introduction

You have opted for a Škoda – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

Your new Škoda offers you a vehicle featuring the most modern engineering and a wide range of equipment which you will undoubtedly wish to use to the full during your daily motoring. That is why, we recommend that you read this Owner's Manual attentively to enable you to become familiar with your car and all that it offers as quickly as possible.

Please do not hesitate to contact your specialist garage or importer should you have any further questions or any problems regarding your vehicle which may arise. He will be ready at any time to receive your questions, suggestions and criticisms.

National legal provisions, which deviate from the information contained in these operating instructions, take precedence over the information contained in the operating instructions.

We wish you much pleasure with your Škoda and pleasant motoring at all times.

Your **Škoda** Auto

On-board literature

The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**Owner's Manual**" as well as a "**Service schedule**" and a "**Help on the road**". There can also be a variety of other additional operating manuals and instructions on-board (e.g. an operating manual for the radio) depending on the vehicle model and equipment.

If one of the publications listed above is missing, please contact a specialist garage immediately, where one will be glad to assist you in such matters.

One should note that the details given in the vehicle's papers always take precedence over those in the Owner's Manual.

Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual describes the **current scope of equipment**. Certain items of equipment listed are only installed later on and only envisaged for particular markets. The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

In addition to information regarding all the controls and equipment, the Owner's Manual also contains important information regarding care and operation for your safety and also to retain the value of your vehicle. To provide you with valuable tips and aids. You will learn how you can operate your vehicle **safely**, **economically** and in an **environmentally** conscious way.

For safety reasons, please also pay attention to the information on accessories, modifications and replacement of parts ⇒ page 179.

The other chapters of the Owner's Manual are also important, however, for proper treatment of your car - in addition to regular care and maintenance - helps to retain its value and in many cases is also one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

The Service schedule

Contains:

- Vehicle data;
- Service intervals;
- Overview of the service work;
- Service proof;
- Confirmation of mobility warranty (only valid in certain countries);
- important information on the warranty.

The confirmations of the carried out service work are one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

Please always present the Service schedule when you take your car to a specialist garage.

If the Service schedule is missing or worn, please contact the specialist garage where your car is serviced regularly. You will receive a duplicate, in which the previously carried out service work are confirmed.

Help on the road

contains the most important telephone numbers in individual countries as well as the addresses and telephone numbers of Škoda importers.

Contents

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations) 6

Using the system 7

Cockpit 9
- General view 9

The brief instruction 10
- Basic functions and important information 10

Instruments and warning lights 15
- Overview of the instrument cluster 15
- Engine revolutions counter 15
- Speedometer 16
- Coolant temperature gauge* 16
- Fuel gauge* 16
- Counter for distance driven 17
- Service Interval Display 17
- Digital clock 18
- Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)* 18
- MAXI DOT display (information display)* 22
- Auto Check Control 23
- Warning lights 25

Unlocking and locking 34
- Key 34
- Locking 35
- Child safety lock 35
- Central locking system* 36
- Remote control* 40
- Anti-theft alarm system* 41
- Interior monitor* and Towing protection monitoring* 42
- Electrical power windows* 43
- Panorama roof* 45

Lights and Visibility 46
- Lights 46
- Interior lighting 51
- Visibility 52
- Windshield wiper and wash system 53
- Rear mirror 55

Seats and Storage 57
- Front seats 57
- Head restraints 58
- Heating the front seats* 59
- Rear seats 59
- Pedals 62
- luggage compartment 62
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment* 66
- Bicycle holder in the luggage compartment* 68
- The roof luggage rack system* 70
- Front cup holder 71
- Rear cup holder* 71
- Parking ticket holder 72
- Ashtray* 72
- Cigarette lighter* and power sockets* 72
- Storage compartments 73

Heating and air conditioning system 78
- Air outlet vents 78
- Recirculated air mode 78
- Heating 79
- Climatic (semi-automatic air conditioning system)* 81
- Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning) 84

Starting-off and Driving 87
- Setting steering wheel position 87
- Ignition lock 87
- Starting the engine 88
- Switching off the engine 89
- Shifting (manual gearbox) 90
- Handbrake 90
- Parking aid* 91
- Cruise control system (CCS)* 92

Automatic gearbox 94
- Automatic gearbox* 94

Communication 100
- Multifunction steering wheel* 100
- Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II* 101
- Voice control 106
- Music playback via Bluetooth® 107
- Inputs AUX-IN* and MDI* 107

Safety 109

Passive Safety 109
- Basic information 109
- Correct seated position 110

Seat belts 113
- Why seat belts? 113
- The physical principle of a frontal collision 113
- Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts 114
- How are seat belts correctly fastened? 115
- Belt tensioner 116

Airbag system 118
- Description of the airbag system 118
- Front airbags 119
- Side airbags* 121
- Head airbags* 123
- Deactivating airbags 124

Transporting children safely 126
- What you should know about transporting children! 126
- Child seat 128
- Attaching a child seat using the “ISOFIX” system* 131
- Attaching child seat using the “Top Tether” system 132

Driving Tips 133

Intelligent Technology 133
- Electronic stability programme (ESP)* 133
- Brakes 135
- Brake booster 136
- Antilock brake system (ABS) 136
- Brake Assist* 137
- Uphill Start Assist* 137
- Electrohydraulic power steering 137
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* 138
- Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine) 139

Driving and the Environment 141
- The first 1 500 kilometres and then afterwards 141
- Catalytic converter 142
- Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner 142
- Environmental compatibility 145
- Motoring abroad 146
- Avoiding damage to your vehicle 146
- Driving through bodies of water on roads 147

Towing a trailer 148
- Towing a trailer 148

General Maintenance 151

Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the vehicle 151
- General 151
- Care of the exterior of vehicle 151
- Care of the interior of vehicle 155

Fuel 158
- Petrol 158
- Diesel 158
- Refuelling 159

Inspecting and replenishing 161
- Engine compartment 161
- Engine oil 163
- Cooling system 165
- Brake fluid 167
- Battery 168
- Windshield washer system 172

Wheels and Tyres 173
- Wheels 173

Accessories, changes and replacement of parts 179
- Accessories and replacement parts 179
- Technical changes 179
- Vehicles of category N1 179

Breakdown assistance 181

Breakdown assistance 181
- First-aid box* and Warning triangle* 181
- Fire extinguisher* 181
- Vehicle tool kit 181
- Tyre repair kit 182
- Spare wheel* 182
- Changing a wheel 183
- Jump-starting 186
- Tow-starting and towing vehicle 188

Fuses and light bulbs 191
- Electric fuses 191
- Bulbs 196

Praktik 203

Praktik 203
- Lashing eyes 203
- Adjustable safety partition behind the front seats 203
- Fixing of the loading floor 203
- Adjustment of the safety partition 204
- Emergency unlocking of the loading area door 204

Technical Data 205

Technical Data 205
- General information 205
- Used abbreviations 205
- Performances 205
- Weight 205
- Identification details 205
- Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines 206
- Dimensions 207
- Engine oil specifications 208
- 1.2 ltr./51 kW - EU5 / EU2 DDK 210
- 1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI - EU5 212
- 1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI - EU5 214
- 1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5 216
- 1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5 218

Index 221

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

The Owner's Manual has been systematically designed, in order to make it easy for you to find and absorb the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is highlighted at the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Sections

The majority of **Sections** apply to all models.

Since there is a wide range of different equipment and options available it is clearly unavoidable, despite dividing the contents into sections, that mention may be made of equipment which is not fitted to your vehicle.

Equipment which is marked * is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

Brief information and instructions

Each section has a **Heading**.

This is followed by **Brief information** (in large italic lettering), which tells you the subject which is dealt with in this section.

Most of the illustrations are accompanied by an **Instruction** (in relatively large letters) which explains to you in a straightforward way the action you have to take. **Work steps** which have to be carried out are illustrated with a hyphen.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Explanation of symbols

* Equipment which is marked in such a way is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

■ End of a section.

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

Notes

All four kinds of notes, which are used in the text, are always stated at the end of the respective section.

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading Warning. These Warning notes draw your attention to a serious risk of accident or injury. While reading the text you will frequently encounter a double arrow followed by a small warning symbol. This symbol is intended to draw your attention to a Warning note at the end of the section to which you must pay careful attention.

Caution

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention in a general way to important information.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Measures

In some countries British measures can be given. ■

Using the system

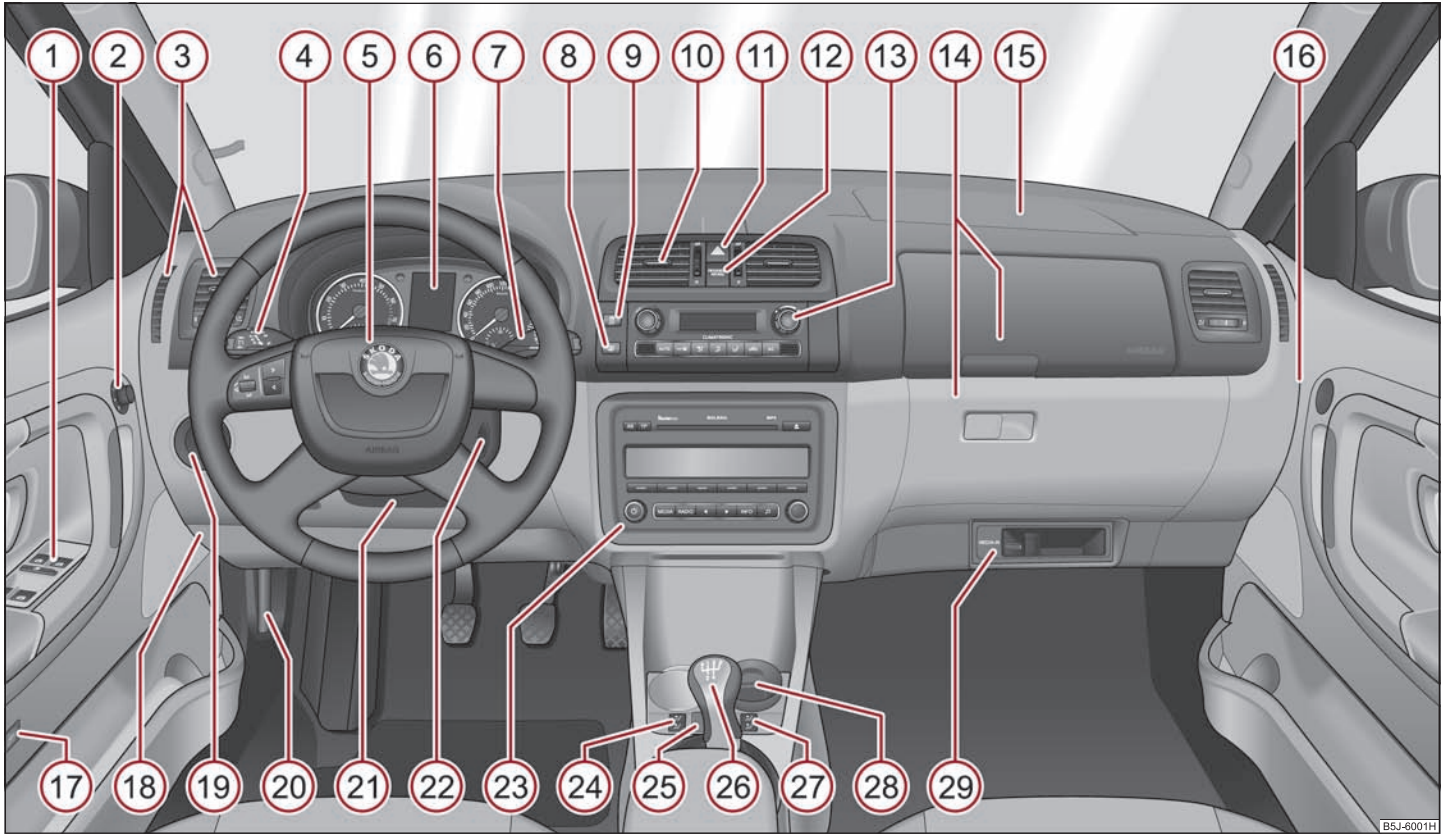


Fig. 1 Certain items of equipment shown in the illustration are only fitted to particular model versions or are optional items of equipment.

Cockpit

General view

This overview will help you to quickly familiarise yourself with the displays and the control elements.

1. Electric power-operated window* 43
2. Electric exterior mirror adjustment* 55
3. Air outlet vents 78
4. Lever for the multi-functional switch:
   - Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher .. 50
   - Speed regulating system* 92
5. Steering wheel:
   - with horn
   - with driver airbag 119
   - with pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone* 100
6. Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights 15
7. Lever for the multi-functional switch:
   - Multi-functional indicator* 18
   - Windshield wiper and wash system 53
8. Switch for rear window heater 52
9. Switch for the TCS* 133
10. Air outlet vents 78
11. Switch for hazard warning lights 49
12. Indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag* 125
13. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Operating controls for the heating 78
    - Operating controls for Climatic* 81
    - Operating controls for Climatronic* 84
14. Storage compartments on the front passenger side* 74
15. Front passenger airbag* 119
16. Switch for front passenger airbag* 125
17. Switch depending on equipment fitted:
    - Unlocking the boot lid* 39
    - Interior monitor* 42
18. Fuse box in the dash panel 191
19. Light switch and headlamp beam adjustment 46, 49
20. Bonnet release lever 161
21. Lever for adjusting the steering wheel 87
22. Ignition lock 87
23. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Radio*
    - Navigation*
24. Rocker switch for the heating on the driver's seat* 59
25. Button for the central locking system* 38
26. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) 90
    - Selector lever (automatic gearbox*) 95
27. Rocker switch for the heating on the front passenger seat* 59
28. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Ashtray* 72
    - Storage compartment 75
29. MDI* 107

Note

- Cars with factory-fitted radio or navigation system are supplied with separate instructions for operating such equipment.
- The arrangement of the control elements on right-hand drive models may differ to some extent from that shown in ⇒ page 8, fig. 1. However the symbols correspond to the individual control elements. ■

The brief instruction

Basic functions and important information

Introduction

The chapter of the brief instruction is only used as a quick reference of the most important operating elements of the vehicle. It is necessary to observe all the information which is contained in the following chapters of the Owner's Manual.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

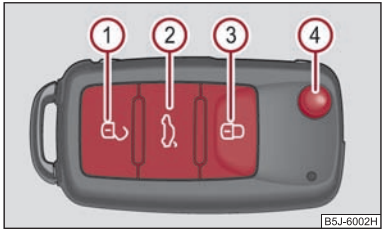


Fig. 2 Remote control key

(1) Unlocking the vehicle

(2) Unlocking the boot lid

(3) Locking the vehicle

(4) Folding out/folding up of the key

Further information ⇒ page 40, “Unlocking and locking car”. ■

Setting steering wheel position

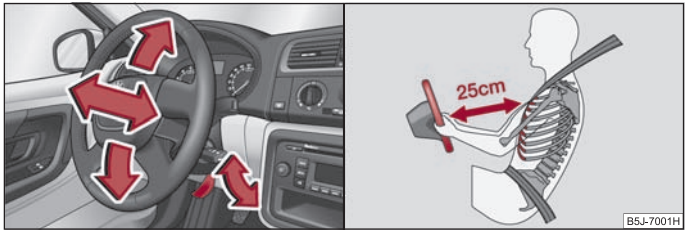


Fig. 3 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever on the steering column / the correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

- Pull the lever below the steering column ⇒ fig. 3 down.
- Set the steering wheel to the desired position (concerning height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards as far as the stop.

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

Further information ⇒ page 87, “Setting steering wheel position”.

⚠ WARNING

- **Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ fig. 3 on the right. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **You must not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving!**

WARNING (continued)

- **For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving – risk of accident!** ■

Seat belt height adjuster

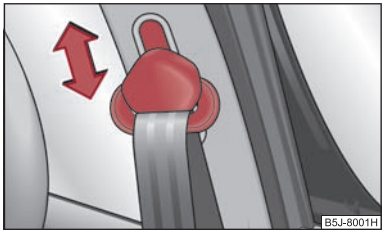


Fig. 4 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

– To adjust the belt height press the height adjuster and move it up or down ⇒ fig. 4.

– Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Further information ⇒ page 115.

WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck! ■

Adjusting the front seats

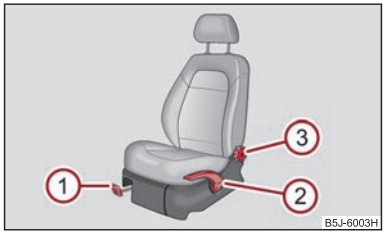


Fig. 5 Controls at seat

(1) Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

(2) Adjusting height of seat*

(3) Adjust the angle of the seat backrest

Further information ⇒ page 57, "Adjusting the front seats".

WARNING

Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of injury! ■

Electric exterior mirror adjustment*

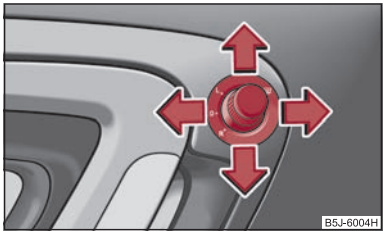


Fig. 6 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

	Heating of the external mirror
L	Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror
R	Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
0	Switching off operating control

Further information ⇒ page 55, “Rear mirror”. ■

Switching lights on and off

Fig. 7 Dash panel: Light switch

0	Switching off all lights
	Switching on side lights
	Switching on the low beam and main beam
	Fog lights*
	Rear fog light

Further information ⇒ page 46, “Switching lights on and off ☼”. ■

Turn signal and main beam lever

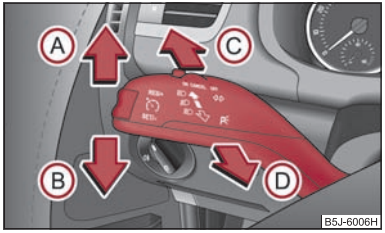


Fig. 8 Turn signal and main beam lever

(A) Turn signal light right

(B) Turn signal light left

(C) Switching over between low beam and main beam lights

(D) Headlight flasher

Further information ⇒ page 50, “The turn signal ⇦ ⇨ and main beam lever ≡D”. ■

Windscreen wiper lever

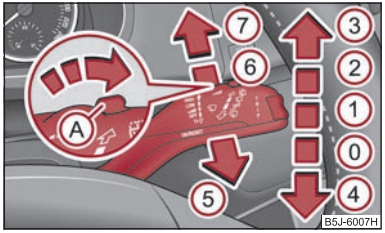


Fig. 9 Windscreen wiper lever

(A) Intermittent switch

(0) Wipers off

(1) Intermittent wipe

▶

(2) Slow wipe

(3) Fast wipe

(4) one time wipe

(5) Automatic wipe/wash

Rear window wiper

(6) Intermittent wipe - every 6 seconds

(7) Automatic wipe/wash

Further information ⇒ page 53, “Windshield wiper”. ■

Power windows*

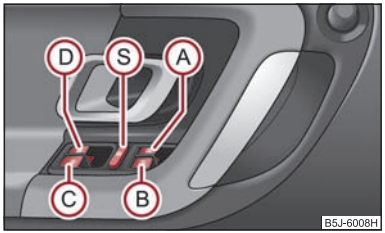


Fig. 10 Buttons on the driver's door

(A) Button for the power window in the driver's door

(B) Button for the power window in the front passenger's door

(C) Button for the power window in the rear door on the right*

(D) Button for the power window in the rear door on the left*

(S) Safety pushbutton*

Further information ⇒ page 43, “Buttons for electrical power windows”. ■

Refuelling

Fig. 11 Right rear side of the vehicle: Fuel filler flap / fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

Opening the fuel filler cap

- Open the fuel filler flap with the hand.
- Unlock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube to the left using the vehicle key.
- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 11 on the right.

Closing fuel filler cap

- Screw on the cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to lock.
- Lock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube by turning the vehicle key to the right and withdraw the key.
- Press the fuel tank flap closed.

Further information ⇒ page 159, “Refuelling”. ■

Bonnet remote release

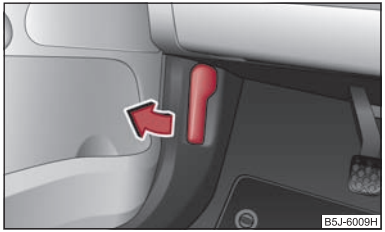


Fig. 12 Bonnet release lever

– Pull the unlocking lever below the dash panel on the driver's side ⇒ fig. 12.

Further information ⇒ page 161, “Bonnet remote release”. ■

Opening the bonnet

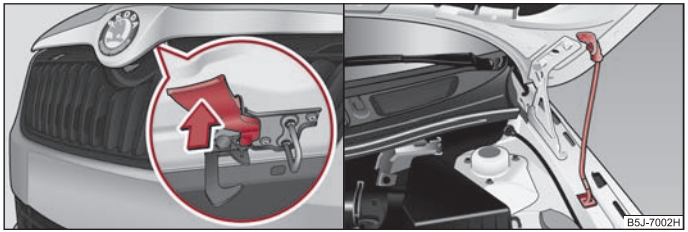


Fig. 13 Radiator grille: Locking lever / securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

– Pull on the locking lever ⇒ fig. 13, the bonnet is then unlocked.

– Take the bonnet support out of its holder and set it in the opening designed for it ⇒ fig. 13 on the right.

Further information ⇒ page 161. ■

Inspecting the engine oil level

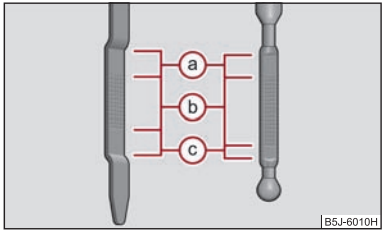


Fig. 14 Dipstick

ⓐ Engine oil **must not** be refilled.

ⓑ Engine oil **can** be refilled.

ⓒ Engine oil **must** be refilled.

Further information ⇒ page 163, “Check engine oil level”. ■

Instruments and warning lights

Overview of the instrument cluster

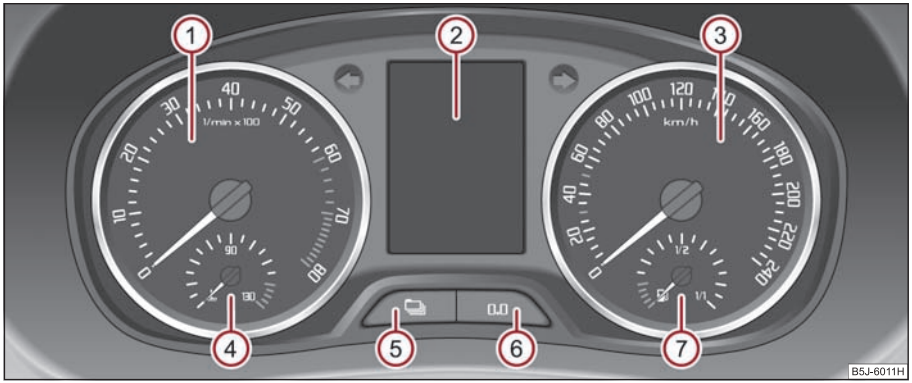


Fig. 15 Instrument cluster

1. Engine revolutions counter
2. Display
   - with counter for distance driven ⇒ page 17
   - with Service Interval Display ⇒ page 17
   - with digital clock ⇒ page 18
   - with Multi-functional indicator* ⇒ page 18
   - with Information display* ⇒ page 22
3. Speedometer ⇒ page 16
4. Coolant temperature gauge* ⇒ page 16
5. Button for display mode:
   - Set hours / minutes
   - Activating / deactivating the second speed in mph or km/h*
   - Service interval - Display of the remaining number of days, kilometres or miles to the next Inspection Service / Reset* [1)]
6. Button for:
   - Reset trip counter for distance driven
   - Resetting Service Interval Display
   - Set hours / minutes
   - Activate / deactivate display mode
7. Fuel gauge* ⇒ page 16 ■

Engine revolutions counter

The red zone of the rev counter scale (1) ⇒ fig. 15 indicates the range in which the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit restricts the engine speed to a steady limit value. ▶

1) Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.

Shift into the next higher gear or select the selector lever position D of the automatic gearbox before reaching the red zone of the rev counter scale.

Avoid high engine speeds during the driving time and before the engine has been warmed up to operating temperature ⇒ page 141.

For the sake of the environment

Shifting to a higher gear in good time helps to reduce the fuel consumption, minimises operating noise levels, protects the environment and contributes to a longer life and reliability of the engine. ■

Speedometer

Warning against excessive speeds*

An acoustic warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 kilometres per hour. The acoustic warning signal will switch off again when the vehicle speed goes below this speed limit.

Note

This function is only valid for some countries. ■

Coolant temperature gauge*

The coolant temperature gauge (4) ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

In order to avoid any damage to the engine, please pay attention to the following notes regarding the temperature ranges:

Cold range

If the pointer is in the left-hand area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid running at high engine speeds, at full throttle and at severe engine loads.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. The pointer may also move further to the right at high engine loads and high outside temperatures. This is not critical provided the warning symbol in the instrument cluster does not flash.

If the symbol in the instrument cluster flashes it means that either the coolant **temperature** is too high or the coolant **level** is too low. Observe the guidelines ⇒ page 28, "Coolant temperature/ Coolant quantity ".

WARNING

Pay attention to the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before opening the bonnet and inspecting the coolant level.

Caution

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the fresh air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant. There is then a risk of the engine overheating at high outside temperatures and high engine loads! ■

Fuel gauge*

The fuel gauge (7) ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres. The warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking. There are now about 7 litres of fuel remaining in the tank. This symbol is a reminder for you, **that you must refuel**.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

Please refuel!

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

On some vehicles, the fuel gauge is shown in the display of the instrument cluster. ▶

Caution

Never run the fuel tank completely empty! The irregular supply of the fuel system can lead to irregular running of the engine. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter. ■

Counter for distance driven

The counter for the distance driven is located in the bottom area of the display. The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in kilometres (km). In some countries the measuring unit "mile" is used.

Reset button

If you hold the reset button (6) ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 pressed for about 1 second, the trip counter is set back to zero.

Trip counter for distance driven

The trip counter indicates the distance which you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Counter for distance driven

The counter for distance driven indicates the total distance in kilometers or miles which the vehicle has been driven.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the constant text **Error** appears in the display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist workshop.

WARNING

Never seek to adjust the trip counter for distance driven while driving for safety reasons!

Note

If vehicles which are fitted with the information display* the display of the second speed is activated in mph or km/h, this driving speed is indicated instead of the counter for the total distance driven. ■

Service Interval Display

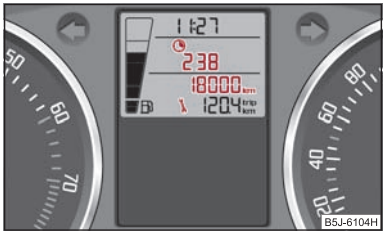


Fig. 16 Service Interval Display: Note

Depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle, the text can differ on the display.

Service Interval Display

Before the next service interval a key symbol and the remaining kilometers are indicated after switching on the ignition ⇒ fig. 16. At the same time, a display appears regarding the remaining days until the next service interval.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

Service in ... km or... days

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km. or days until the service due date is reached.

A flashing key symbol and the text **Service** appears in the display for 20 seconds as soon as the due date for the service is reached.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

Service now!

Display regarding the distance and days until the following service interval

You can use the button (5) to display the remaining distance driven and the days until the next service interval ⇒ page 15.

A key symbol and a display regarding the remaining kilometers appear for 10 second in the display. At the same time, a display appears regarding the remaining days until the next service interval. ▶

On vehicles which are equipped with information display*, you can call up this information in the menu **SETUP** ⇒ page 22.

The following will be displayed in the information display* for 10 seconds:

Service in ... km or... days

Resetting Service Interval Display

It is only possible to reset the Service Interval Display, if a service message or at least a pre-warning is shown on the display of the instrument cluster.

We recommend having this resetting performed by a specialist garage.

The specialist garage:

- resets the memory of the display after the appropriate inspection;
- makes an entry in the Service schedule;
- affix the sticker with the entry of the following service interval to the side of the dash panel on the driver's side.

Reset the service interval displays by using the reset button (6) ⇒ page 15 on the trip counter.

On vehicles which are equipped with information display*, you can call up this information in the menu **SETUP** ⇒ page 22.

Caution

We recommend that you do not reset the Service Interval Display yourself otherwise this can result in the service interval display being incorrectly set, which may also result in problems with operation of your vehicle.

Note

- Never reset the display between service intervals otherwise this may result in incorrect readouts.
- information is retained in the Service Interval Display also after the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- The data displayed is the same after resetting the display with flexible service intervals (QG1) using the reset button as that for a vehicle with fixed service intervals (QG2). We therefore recommend having the Service Interval Display reset only by an authorised Škoda Service Partner who is familiar with the procedure for resetting the display with a vehicle system tester.
- Please refer to the brochure Service schedule for extensive information about the service intervals. ■

Digital clock

The time is set with the buttons (5) and (6) ⇒ page 15, fig. 15.

Select the display which you wish to change with the button (5) and carry out the change with the button (6).

On vehicles which are fitted out with the information display*, it is possible to set the time in the menu **Time** ⇒ page 24.

WARNING

The clock should not be adjusted while driving for safety reasons but only when the vehicle is stationary! ■

Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)*

Introduction

The multi-functional indicator appears in the display ⇒ page 19, fig. 17 or in the information display ⇒ page 22 depending on the equipment fitted to your vehicle.

The multi-functional indicator offers you a range of useful information.

The outside temperature	⇒ page 20
Driving time	⇒ page 20
Current fuel consumption	⇒ page 20
Average fuel consumption	⇒ page 20

Range	⇒ page 21
Distance driven	⇒ page 21
Average speed	⇒ page 21
Current speed*	⇒ page 21
Warning against excessive speeds*	⇒ page 21

On vehicles which are fitted out with information display*, it is possible to switch off the display of some information.

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed* is not indicated in km/h on the display. ■

Memory

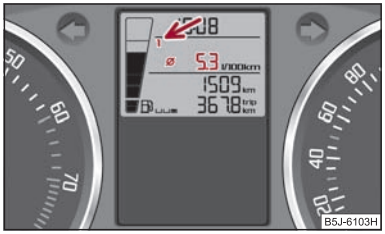


Fig. 17 Multi-functional indicator

The multi-functional indicator is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is displayed in the middle of the display field ⇒ fig. 17.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switching over the memory takes place with the button (B) ⇒ fig. 18 on the windshield wiper lever.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. The memory will be is automatically erased, on the other hand, if the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total distance driven memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes driving or 1.999 kilometres driven and on vehicles which are fitted with information display* up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9.999 kilometres driven.

The total-trip memory will not, contrary to the single-trip memory, be deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected. ■

Using the system

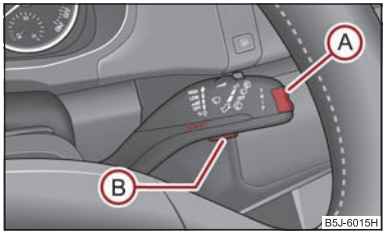


Fig. 18 Multi-functional indicator: Control elements

The rocker switch (A) and the button (B) are located in the grip of the window wiper lever ⇒ fig. 18. ▶

Selecting the memory

– Short-term pressing of the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever allows to select the desired memory.

Selecting the functions

– Press the top or bottom rocker switch (A) for longer than 0.5 seconds. In this way, call up in sequence the individual functions of the multi-functional indicator.

Setting function to zero

– Select the memory you want.

– Press button (B) for more than 1 second.

The following readouts of the selected memory will be set to zero by button (B):

- average fuel consumption;
- distance driven;
- average speed;
- Driving time.

You can only operate the multi-functional indicator when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition. ■

Outside temperature

The outside temperature appears in the display when the ignition is switched on.

If the outside temperature drops below +4°C, a snow flake symbol (warning signal for ice on the road) appears in front of the temperature indicator and flashes for 10 seconds, then remains displayed together with the outside temperature. At the same time an audible signal sounds. After pressing the rocker switch (A) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 19, fig. 18, the function which was shown last is indicated.

⚠ WARNING

Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Please note that black ice may also be present

⚠ WARNING (continued)

on the road surface even at temperatures around +4°C – warning, drive with care! ■

Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display ⇒ page 19. If you wish to calculate the driving time from a particular time of day you must first erase the memory at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) ⇒ page 19, fig. 18.

The maximum time indicated in both switch positions is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with information display*, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed.

The indicated value will be updated every 0.5 seconds while you are driving. ■

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km ⇒ page 19. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time you must first erase the memory at the start of the new measurement using the button (B) ⇒ page 19, fig. 18. A zero appears in the display for the first 300 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving. ▶

Note

The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated. ■

Range

The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the present level of fuel in the tank for the same style of driving.

The readout is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light for the fuel reserve the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption for the last 50 km is taken as a basis for calculating the range. If you drive in a more economical manner from this moment on, the range will be increased accordingly.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), the fuel consumption of 10 ltr./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is adapted accordingly to the style of driving. ■

Distance driven

The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display ⇒ page 19. If you wish to calculate the distance driven as of a particular time, you must erase the memory at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 19, fig. 18.

The maximum distance indicated in both switch positions is 1.999 kilometres, on vehicles which are fitted with information display* it is 9.999 kilometres. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour ⇒ page 19. If you wish to determine the average speed over a certain period of time, you must erase the memory at the start of the new measurement by pressing the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 19, fig. 18.

A zero appears in the display for the first 100 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving. ■

Current speed*

The current speed which is identical to the display of the speedometer, is indicated on the display (2) ⇒ page 15, fig. 15. ■

Warning against excessive speeds*

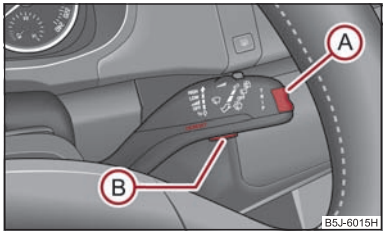


Fig. 19 Multi-functional indicator: Control elements

This function enables you to set a speed limit, e.g. if you drive in town. A text in the display is intended to draw your attention to the fact that you have exceeded the set speed limit.

Warning against excessive speeds

- Select the menu point **Speed warning --- km/h (warning at --- km/h)**..
- Drive e.°g at a speed of 50 km/h.
- Press button (B) ⇒ fig. 19. **Speed warning 50 km/h (warning at 50 km/h)** is displayed in the information display*. You can increase or reduce this value with the aid of the button (A).
- After repeated pressing of the button (B), the value is stored.

After pressing again, the value is erased and **---** is shown in the information display*.

If you now exceed the set speed limit, **Speed 50°km/h exceeded** will be shown on the display. This text is shown until you lower the speed below the set limit or you switch off the displayed text with the button (B) ⇒ fig. 19. ▶

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

The set speed limit remains stored even after switching off the ignition. ■

MAXI DOT display (information display)*

Introduction

The information display provides you with information in a convenient way concerning the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the radio, mobile phone, multi-functional indicator, navigation system, the unit connected to the MDI input and the automatic gearbox.

Certain functions and operating conditions are always being checked on the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Functional faults, if required repair work and other information are indicated by red symbols ⇒ page 23 and yellow symbols ⇒ page 24.

Lighting up of certain symbols is combined with an acoustic warning signal.

Information and texts giving warnings are also shown in the display ⇒ page 25.

The display of text is possible in the following languages:

Czech, English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Russian and Chinese.

You can select the desired language in the setting menu.

The following information can be shown in the display (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

Main menu	⇒ page 22
Door, luggage compartment door and bonnet ajar warning	⇒ page 23
Service Interval Display	⇒ page 17
Selector lever position for an automatic gearbox	⇒ page 94

■

Main menu

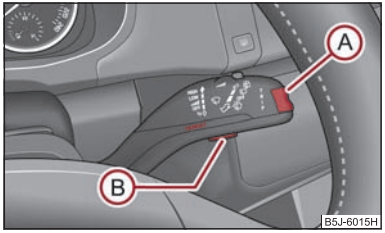


Fig. 20 Information display: Control elements

– You can activate the **MAIN MENU** by pressing the rocker switch (A) ⇒ fig. 20 for more than 1 second.

– You can select individual menu points by means of the rocker switch (A). When the pushbutton (B) is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

You can select the following information (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **MFD (Onboard computer)** ⇒ page 18
- **Audio***
- **Navigation***
- **Phone*** ⇒ page 101
- **Vehicle status** ⇒ page 23
- **Setup** ⇒ page 24

The menu point **Audio** is only then displayed when the factory-fitted Radio* is switched on.

The menu point **Navigation** is only then displayed when the factory-fitted Navigation system* is switched on. ▶

Note

- If warning messages are shown in the information display ⇒ page 23, these messages can be confirmed with the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever in order to call up the main menu.
- If you do not activate the information display at that moment, the menu shifts to one level higher every 10 seconds.
- The operation of the factory-fitted radio* or the navigation system* is described in separate operating instructions to be found in the on-board literature. ■

Door, luggage compartment door and bonnet ajar warning

The door, luggage compartment and bonnet ajar warning lights up if at least one door, the luggage compartment or bonnet are not closed. The symbol indicates which door is still open or whether the luggage compartment door or bonnet is **not closed**.

The symbol goes out as soon as the doors, luggage compartment door and bonnet are completely closed.

A warning signal sounds if the car is driven at a speed of more than 6km/hour and if the engine or the luggage compartment door is open. ■

Auto Check Control

Car state

The Auto Check Control carries out a check of certain functions and vehicle components. The check is performed constantly when the ignition is switched on, both when the vehicle is stationary, as well as when driving.

Some operational faults, urgent repairs, service work or other information appear in the display of the instrument cluster. The displays are shown with a red or yellow light symbol depending on the priority of the message.

The red symbols indicate **danger** (priority 1) while the yellow symbols indicate a **warning** (priortity 2). Information for the driver may also appear in addition to the symbols ⇒ page 25.

Shown in the menu **Vehicle status**, if there is at least one error message. After selecting this menu the first of the error messages is displayed. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is displayed. The respective messages are displayed one after the other in an interval of 5 seconds. Check as soon as possible the displayed error messages.

As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After the first display, the symbols are indicated without information for the driver.

If a fault occurs, a warning signal will also sound in addition to the symbol and text in the display:

- Priority 1 - three warning signals
- Priority 2 - one warning signal ■

Red symbols

A red symbol signals danger.

- Bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Switch the engine off.
- Investigate the function indicated.
- Obtain professional assistance.

Meaning of the red symbols:

	Engine oil pressure too low	⇒ page 28
	Overheated clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG*	⇒ page 94

Three successive warning signals will sound if a red symbol appears. ■

Yellow symbols

A yellow symbol signals a warning.

Check the relevant function as soon as possible.

The meaning of the yellow symbols:

	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	⇒ page 28

One warning signal will sound if a yellow symbol appears.

If several operational faults of priority 2 exist, the symbols appear one after the other and are each illuminated for about 5 seconds. ■

Setup

You can change certain settings by means of the information display. The current setting is shown on the information display in the respective menu at the top below the line.

You can select the following information (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **Language**
- **MFD Data (MFA DATA)**
- **Time**
- **Winter tyres**
- **Units**
- **Alt. speed dis.**
- **Service Interval (Service)**
- **Factory Setting**
- **Back**

After selecting the menu point **Back** you will reach one level higher in the menu.

Language

Here you can set in which language the warning and information texts should be displayed.

Displays of the MFA

Here you can switch off or on certain displays of the multi-functional indicator.

Time

Here you can set the time, the time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the time change summer/winter time.

Winter tyres

Here you can set at which speed a warning signal should sound. This function is used for e.g winter tyres with the permissible maximum speed less than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

When exceeding the speed, the following is displayed on the information display*:

Snow tyres max. speed ... km/h (Winter tyres maximum ... km/h)

Measures

Here you can set the units for temperature, consumption and distance driven.

Second speed

Here you can switch on the display of the second speed in mph or in km/h[2)].

Service

Here you can have the kilometers still to be driven and the days until the following service interval shown and the Service Interval Display reset.

Factory Setting

After selecting the menu point **Factory Setting** the factory setting of the information display is established again. ■

---

2) Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.

Warning lights

Overview

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Fig. 21 Instrument cluster with warning lights

	Turn signal lights (to the left)	⇒ page 26
	Turn signal lights (to the right)	⇒ page 26
	Main beam light	⇒ page 26
	Low beam light	⇒ page 26
	Rear fog light	⇒ page 27
	Failure of the light bulbs	⇒ page 27
	Dynamo	⇒ page 27

	Fog lights*	⇒ page 27
	Electrohydraulic power steering	⇒ page 27
EPC	EPC fault light (petrol engine)	⇒ page 27
	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	⇒ page 28
	Coolant temperature/coolant level	⇒ page 28
	Fuel reserve	⇒ page 28

	Engine oil	⇒ page 28
	Open door	⇒ page 29
	Fluid level in windshield washer system*	⇒ page 29
	Control system for exhaust	⇒ page 29
	Traction control system (TCS)*	⇒ page 30
	Tyre pressure monitoring system*	⇒ page 30
	Selector lever lock*	⇒ page 30
	Traction control system (TCS)*	⇒ page 30
	Electronic stability programme (ESP)*	⇒ page 30
	Antilock brake system (ABS)	⇒ page 31
	Brake system	⇒ page 31
	Cruise control system*	⇒ page 32
	Airbag system	⇒ page 32
	Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)	⇒ page 32
	Seat belt warning light	⇒ page 33

WARNING

- **If you do not pay attention to the warning lights coming on and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes, this may result in severe body injuries or major vehicle damage.**
- **The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is also essential to observe all warnings ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment".**

Note

- Arrangement of the indicator lights depends on the model and model version.
- Operational faults are shown in the instrument cluster as red symbols (priority 1 - danger) or yellow symbols (priority 2 - warning). ■

Turn signal system

Either the left ⇦ or right ⇨ indicator light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a turn signal light fails.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both indicator lights to flash.

Further information about the turn signal system ⇒ page 50. ■

Main beam

The indicator light comes on when the main beam is selected or also when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information about the main beam ⇒ page 50. ■

Low beam

The warning light comes on when low beam is selected ⇒ page 46. ■

Rear fog light

The warning light comes on when the rear fog lights are operating ⇒ page 48. ■

Bulb failure

The warning light comes on if a bulb is faulty:

- up to 2 seconds after the ignition is switched on;
- when switching on the defective light bulb.

The following text e.g will be displayed in the information display*:

Check front right dipped beam!

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting require several light bulbs. The indicator light only lights up if all light bulbs of the licence plate lighting or the parking light (in one rear light unit) are defective. Check regularly the function of the light bulbs. ■

Alternator

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. It should go out after the engine has started.

If the warning light does not go out after the engine has started, or comes on when driving, drive to the nearest specialist garage. The vehicle battery will be discharged in this case so switch off all non-essential electrical components.

Caution

If the warning light comes on when driving and in addition the warning light (cooling system fault) also comes on in display, you must then stop the car immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage! ■

Fog lights*

The warning light comes on when the fog lights are operating ⇒ page 48. ■

Electrohydraulic power steering

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light after switching on the ignition or when driving lights up continuously, a fault exists in the electrohydraulic power steering. The power steering operates with reduced steering assist or is completely without function.

Further information ⇒ page 137.

WARNING

Contact your specialist garage if the power steering is defective.

Note

- If the yellow warning light goes out after starting the engine again and a short drive, it is not necessary to visit a specialist garage.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance.
- There is no power-assisted steering support when the vehicle is being towed without the engine running or when the power-assisted steering is defect. The vehicle is fully steerable however. There is however increased force required to turn the steering wheel. ■

EPC fault light EPC (petrol engine)

The EPC (Electronic Power Control) warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light EPC flashes after starting the engine or flashes while driving, a fault exists in the engine control system. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Engine fault: Workshop! ■

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

The warning light lights up for a **cold** engine when switching on the ignition (pre-heat position) **2** ⇒ page 87. Start the engine after the indicator light goes out.

The glow plug indicator light will come on for about 1 second if the engine is at a **normal operating temperature** or if the outside temperature is above +5°C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the **warning light** **does not come on** or **lights up continuously**; contact a specialist garage as soon as possible to obtain assistance.

If the **warning light** begins **to flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Engine fault: Workshop! ■

Coolant temperature/ Coolant quantity

The warning light lights up until the engine reaches operating temperature[3]. Avoid running at high engine speeds, at full throttle and at severe engine loads.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level too low if the warning light lights up or flashes while driving.

3 peeps sound as an additional warning signal.

In this case stop and switch the engine off and check the coolant level; top up the coolant as necessary ⇒ page 166, "Replenishing the coolant".

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

[3] Not valid for vehicles with information display.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the coolant fan. Check the fuse for the coolant fan, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 194, "Fuse assignment at the battery (manual gearbox, automatic gearbox DSG)".

If the warning light does not go out although the coolant is at the correct level and also the fuse of the fan is in proper order, **do not continue driving**. Contact a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

Please also refer to the additional instructions ⇒ page 165, "Cooling system".

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Check coolant! Owner's manual

WARNING

If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system ⇒ page 49, "Switch for hazard warning lights ⚠". ■

Fuel reserve

The warning light comes on, if the fuel level is less than 7 litres.

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Please refuel! Range...km ■

Engine oil

The warning light lights up red (low oil pressure)

The warning light comes on for a few seconds [4] when the ignition is switched on.

Stop the vehicle and switch the engine off if the warning light does not go off after the engine has started or flashes while driving. Check the oil level and top up with oil as necessary ⇒ page 163.

[4] The warning light on vehicles fitted with information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if a fault exists or the engine oil level is too low.

3 peeps sound as an additional warning signal.

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

Do not drive any further if the warning light flashes even if the oil is at the correct level. Do not run the engine not at idling speed either. Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Oil Pressure Engine off! Owner's manual!

The warning light lights up yellow* (oil quantity too low)

If the warning light lights up yellow, the quantity of oil in the engine is probably too low. Check as soon as possible the oil level or top up ⇒ page 163 with engine oil.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Check oil level!

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes yellow* (engine oil level sensor faulty)

A fault on the engine oil level sensor is indicated additionally by an audible signal and the warning light coming on several times after the ignition has been switched on.

In this case have the engine inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Oil sensor Workshop!

WARNING

- **If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system ⇒ page 49.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The red oil pressure light is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refueling stop.**
- **Pay attention to the following instructions ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before checking the coolant fluid level and opening the bonnet.** ■

Open door

The warning light comes on if one or several doors are opened or if the boot lid is opened. If one of the doors opens while driving, the warning light lights up and an audible signal sounds.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

On vehicles with information display* this warning light is replaced by a vehicle symbol ⇒ page 23. ■

Windshield washer fluid level*

The warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on if there is insufficient fluid in the windshield washer system. Top up with liquid ⇒ page 172.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Top up wash fluid! ■

Control system for exhaust

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

If the warning light does not go out after starting the engine or it lights up when driving, a fault exists in an exhaust relevant component. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving. ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The warning light lights up if the TCS system is switched off.

Further information about the TCS ⇒ page 134. ■

Tyre pressure monitoring system*

The warning light lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Reduce the speed and check or correct as soon as possible the inflation pressure in the tyres ⇒ page 173.

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

If the warning light flashes , there is a system fault. Visit the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified.

Further information about the tyre pressure monitoring system ⇒ page 138.

WARNING

- **When the warning light lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Please stop the vehicle without delay at the nearest possible stop and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressures.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.**

Note

If the battery has been disconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Selector lever lock* (automatic gearbox)

If the **green** warning light lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary, in order to be able to move the selector lever out of the position **P** or **N**.

Further information about the selector lever lock ⇒ page 96. ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The warning light flashes quickly when a control cycle is activated while driving.

The warning light lights up permanently if there is a fault in the TCS system.

The fact that the TCS system operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the TCS system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the TCS system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the TCS system is fully functional again.

Further information about the TCS ⇒ page 134, “Traction control system (TCS)*”.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Electronic stability programme (ESP)*

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the ESP helps to stabilise the vehicle (for example when applying and releasing a braking force to an individual wheel), then the indicator light flashes quickly.

The warning light lights up permanently if there is a fault in the ESP system.

The fact that the ESP system operates together with the ABS means that the ESP warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ESP system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the ESP system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the ESP system is fully functional again.

Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 133, “Electronic stability programme (ESP)*”. ▶

Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Antilock brake system (ABS)

The warning light shows the functionality of the ABS.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on or when starting the engine. The warning light goes out after an automatic check sequence has been completed.

A fault in the ABS

The system is not functioning properly if the ABS warning light does not go out within a few seconds after switching on the ignition, does not light up at all or lights up while driving. The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving to take account of the fault in the meantime since you will not know the extent of the fault and in how far the effect of the antilock brakes is affected.

Further information about ABS ⇒ page 136, “Antilock brake system (ABS)”.

A fault in the entire brake system

If the ABS warning light comes on together with the brake system warning light (handbrake must be released), there is a fault not only in the ABS but also in another part of the brake system ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **If the brake system warning light comes on together with the ABS warning light stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 167, “Brake fluid”. If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance.**
- **Pay attention to the following instructions before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet ⇒ page 162, “Working in the engine compartment”.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If the brake fluid is at the correct level, the ABS control function has failed. The rear wheels may then block very rapidly when braking. In certain circumstances, this can result in the rear end of the car breaking away – risk of skidding! Drive carefully to the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified.** ■

Brake system

The warning light flashes or comes on if the brake fluid level is too low, if there is a fault in the ABS or if the handbrake is applied.

If the warning light flashes and an audible signal sounds three times (handbrake is not applied), **stop** and check the brake fluid level ⇒ ⚠.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Brake fluid Owner's manual

If there is a fault in the ABS which also influences the function of the brake system (e.g. distribution of brake pressure), the ABS warning light comes on and at the same time the brake system warning light starts flashing . Be aware that not only the ABS but also another part of th brake system is defective ⇒ ⚠.

An audible signal sounds three times as an additional warning signal.

One should get used to high pedal forces, an extended free play of the brake pedal and long braking distances when carefully driving to the specialist garage.

For further information on the brake system ⇒ page 135, “Brakes”.

Handbrake applied

The warning light also comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Release parking brake! ▶

WARNING

- **Pay attention to the following instructions before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment".**
- **If the brake system warning light ⓘ does not go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition or comes on when driving, stop immediately and check the brake fluid in the reservoir ⇒ page 167, "Brake fluid". If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance.** ■

Cruise control system*

The warning light lights up, when operating the speed regulating system. ■

Airbag system

Monitoring the airbag system

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

There is a fault in the system if the warning light does not go out or comes on or flashes while driving ⇒ ⚠. This also applies if the warning light does not come on after the ignition is switched on.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Airbag fault!

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

Front, side and head airbags or belt tensioner which have been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

- The warning light lights up for 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes for 12 seconds afterwards in 2 second intervals.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated!

If the passenger front airbag has been switched off using the switch (for switching off airbags)* in the end face of the dash panel on the front passenger side:

- The warning light comes on for 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- switching off the airbag is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the yellow indicator light in display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** ⇒ page 125.

WARNING

Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

Note

Further information about switching off airbags ⇒ page 124, "Deactivating airbags". ■

Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)

If the warning light comes on, this means that soot has accumulated in the diesel particle filter because of the frequent short distances.

In order to clean the diesel particle filter, the vehicle should be driven at an even speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of 1 800 – 2 500 rpm for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out with the 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S) when the traffic situation permits it. This increases the exhaust temperature and the soot deposited in the diesel particle filter is burnt.

Always pay attention to the valid speed limits ⇒ ⚠.

The warning light goes out after the successful cleaning of the diesel particle filter.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash. In the information display* appears **Diesel-particle Owner's manual**. Afterwards the engine control unit shifts the engine into the emergency mode, which only has a reduced power output. After switching the ignition off and on again the warning light comes on.

Have the vehicle inspected without delay by your specialist garage. ▶

WARNING

- **If you do not pay attention to the warning light coming on and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes, this may result in injuries or major vehicle damage.**
- **Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The route indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.**

Caution

As long as the warning light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.

Note

Further information about diesel particle filter ⇒ page 139, “Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)”. ■

Seat belt warning light*

The warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt. The warning light only goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver or front passenger, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and simultaneously the warning light flashes.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

In case of a load on the front passenger seat e.g. a bag (this is not recommended for safety reasons) the warning light indicates that the seat belt is not fastened.

Further information on the seat belts ⇒ page 113, “Why seat belts?”. ■

Unlocking and locking

Key

Description

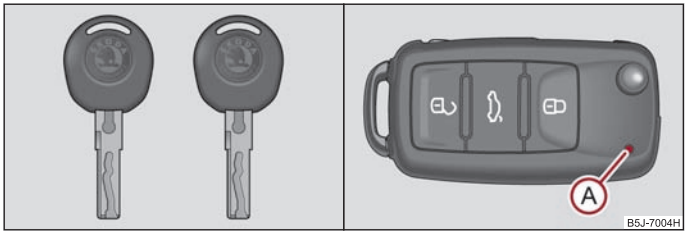


Fig. 22 Set of keys without remote control / Keys with remote control key

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle can be equipped with keys without radio remote control or with radio remote control keys* ⇒ fig. 22.

WARNING

- **Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!**
- **Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!**

Caution

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore protect them against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean as impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the proper operation of the locking cylinder and the ignition lock.

Note

Please approach a specialist garage if you lose a key since he can obtain a new one for you. ■

Changing the battery in the remote control key

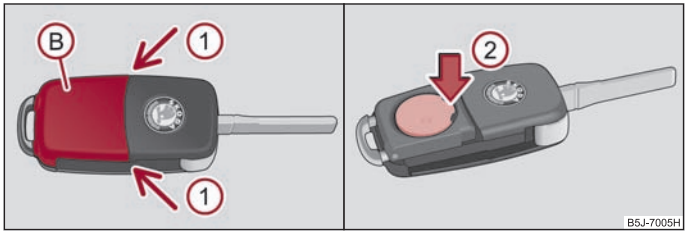


Fig. 23 Remote control key – remove cover / remove battery

Each remote control key contains a battery which is housed under the cover (B) ⇒ fig. 23. If the battery is discharged, the red indicator light (A) does not light up after pressing a button on the remote control ⇒ fig. 23. Change the battery as follows:

- Fold open the key.
- Carefully press off the cover at the points of the arrows (1).
- Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery downwards at the point of the arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 23.
- Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is shown on the battery cover.
- Position the battery cover on the key and press on it until it is heard to lock in place. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of a used battery in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- If it is still not be possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control even after replacing the battery this means that the system has to be synchronised ⇒ page 41. ■

Electronic immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser prevents the vehicle being operated by an unauthorised person.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when you withdraw the ignition key from the lock.

Note

It is only possible to start the engine of your car with a Genuine Škoda key with the matching code. ■

Locking

Valid for vehicles without a central locking system:

Locking from outside

The securing knob will move upwards or downwards in the door when unlocking or locking.

Locking from inside

All closed vehicle doors are locked by pressing in the securing knobs from the inside. The doors cannot be opened from the outside when the securing knobs have been pressed in. The vehicle doors can be opened from the inside as follows:

- the door is unlocked by actuating the door-opening lever;
- The door opens upon actuating the door-opening lever again.

Note

- The opened door cannot be locked with the securing knob. This prevents the possibility of forgetting the key in the locked vehicle.
- The opened doors at the rear and the front passenger door are locked by pressing in the securing knob and slamming the door closed.
- Please refer to the safety guidelines ⇒ ⚠ in "Description" on page 36. ■

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside.

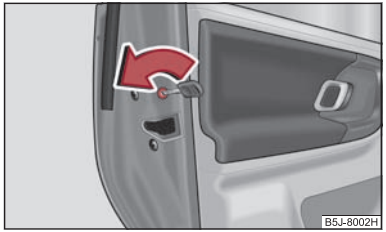


Fig. 24 Child safety locks on the rear doors

The rear doors are equipped with a child safety lock. You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching child safety lock on

– Use the vehicle key to turn the slit in the rear door to the left in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 24.

Switching child safety lock off

– Use the vehicle key to turn the slit to the right against the direction of the arrow.

So long as the child safety lock is switched on it is not possible to open the door from the inside with the door opening lever. In this case the door can be opened only from the outside. ■

Central locking system*

Description

Unlocking or locking the vehicle causes **all** doors to be unlocked or locked at the same time by the central locking system. The boot lid is unlocked when opening. It can be opened by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate.

Operation of the central locking system is possible:

- from the outside using the vehicle key ⇒ page 37;
- using the buttons for the central locking system ⇒ page 38;
- by using the remote control ⇒ page 40.

Indicator light in the driver's door

After locking the vehicle the indicator light flashes for 2 seconds fast, then more slowly.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system ⇒ page 36 is not operating, the indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash slowly after about 30 seconds.

If the indicator light first of all flashes fast for about 2 seconds, afterwards lights up for about 30 seconds and then flashes slowly, there is a fault in the system of the central locking or the interior monitor* ⇒ page 42. Visit a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

Convenience operation of the windows

One can open and close the electrically powered windows when unlocking and locking the vehicle ⇒ page 44, “Window convenience operation”.

Opening a single door*

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated. The single door opening function can be first activated by recoding the control unit of the central locking system. This work is undertaken by a specialist garage which can give you more information.

Automatic locking*

All the doors and the boot lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. The driver can also unlock the vehicle by pressing the button of the central locking system.

If you wish, you can have a specialist garage activate the automatic locking function.

WARNING

Locking the doors prevents involuntary opening in an exceptional situation (an accident). Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. Locked doors do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!

Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the front doors can be unlocked and locked using the key if the central locking system fails. You can operate the rear doors manually.
  - Emergency locking of the door ⇒ page 38.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid ⇒ page 39. ■

Safe securing

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing**[5] system. Locking the vehicle from the outside causes the door locks to be automatically blocked. The indi- ▶

[5] The equipment is only valid for some countries.

cator light in the driver's door flashes. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent for attempts to break into your vehicle.

You can deactivate the safe securing system by locking twice within 5 seconds.

The safe securing system is again activated the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated, you can open the vehicle from the inside by pulling on the door opening lever. The door is unlocked and opened at the same time.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person and animals in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

The anti-theft alarm system* is also activated with the deactivated safe securing system when locking the vehicle. The interior monitor* is however not activated. ■

Unlocking the vehicle using the key

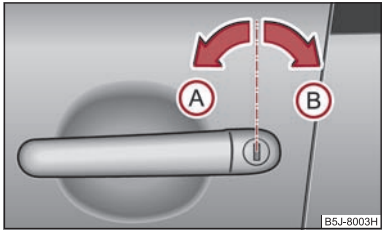


Fig. 25 Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

– Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of travel (unlock position) (A) ⇒ fig. 25.

– Pull on the door handle and carefully open the door.

- All the doors are unlocked.
- The boot lid is then unlocked.
- The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
- The safe securing system is deactivated.
- The windows open provided the key **is held** in the unlock position.
- The indicator light in the driver's door stops flashing if the vehicle is not fitted with an anti-theft alarm system* ⇒ page 41.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system*, you must insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds. ■

Locking the vehicle with the key

– Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the opposite direction of travel (lock position) (B) ⇒ fig. 25.

- All the doors and the boot lid are locked.
- The switched on interior lights go out over the door contact.
- The windows close provided the key **is held** in the lock position.
- The safe securing system is activated immediately.
- The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.

Note

The opened front doors cannot be unlocked. It must be locked separately after closing it. ■

Button for the central locking system*

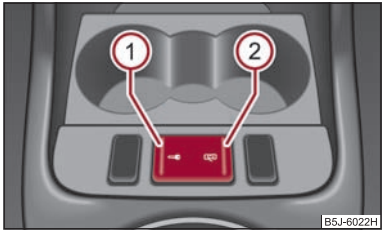


Fig. 26 Button for the central locking system

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock and lock it with the rocker switch without the ignition switched on.

Locking all doors and the boot lid

– Press button (1) ⇒ fig. 26. The symbol 🔒 in the button comes on.

Unlocking all doors and the boot lid

– Press button (2) ⇒ fig. 26. The symbol 🔒 goes out in the button.

The following applies if you have locked your vehicle using the button (1):

- It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- You can unlock the doors individually from the inside and open them by pulling the door opening lever.
- As long as one door is opened, the doors cannot be locked in order to avoid inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. All the doors and the boot lid are locked. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked. Locked doors make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

The door opening lever and the button for the central locking system do not operate if the safe securing system is activated. ■

Emergency locking of the doors

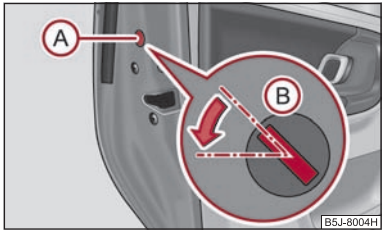


Fig. 27 Emergency locking of the door

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the rear side of the doors which have no locking cylinder; it is only visible after opening the door.

Locking

– Remove the panel (A) ⇒ fig. 27.

– Insert the key into the slot (B) and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

– Re-insert the panel.

After closing the door, you can no longer open it from outside. If the child safety lock is not switched on, it is possible to open the door from the inside by pulling once on ▶

the door handle. If the child safety lock is activated (only on the rear doors), first of all it is necessary to pull once on the inner door handle and then open the door from the outside. ■

Boot lid*

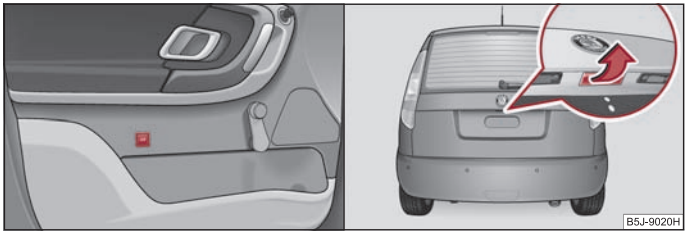


Fig. 28 Unlock the boot lid / handle of the boot lid

Opening the boot lid

– **On vehicles with central locking** unlock the boot lid by pressing the button on the driver door ⇒ fig. 28.

On vehicles with central locking unlock the boot lid by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate.

Closing the boot lid

– Pull the boot lid down and close it with a slight swing ⇒ ⚠.

On vehicles with central locking unlock the boot lid by pressing the button on the driver door ⇒ fig. 28.

On vehicles with central locking unlock the boot lid by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate.

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner paneling of the boot lid.

⚠ WARNING

- **Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if the boot lid lock is closed – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!**
- **Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!**

Note

- **After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 1 second and the anti-theft alarm system* is activated.** This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the hand grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or as of a speed of more than 6 km/hour for vehicles with central locking. The function of the hand grip is activated again when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.
- Hold the boot lid when opening. ■

Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

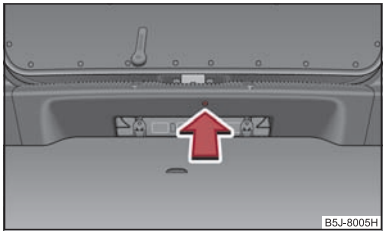


Fig. 29 Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

If there is a fault in the central locking, you can open the boot lid as follows:

– Fold one of the outer rear seats forwards. ▶

– Move the operating lever A with the aid of a narrow object e.g. screwdriver up to the stop in the direction of arrow; the boot lid is then unlocked.

– Open the boot lid from the outside. ■

Remote control*

Description

You can use the remote control:

- to unlock and lock the vehicle;
- unlocking boot lid.

The transmitter with the battery is incorporated in the handle of the master key. The receiver is located in the interior of the car. The operating range of the remote control is approx. 10 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The master key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or a new unit installed, it is then necessary for a specialist garage to adapt the system. Only after this is it possible to again use the remote control.

Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does not react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away. We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Unlocking and locking car

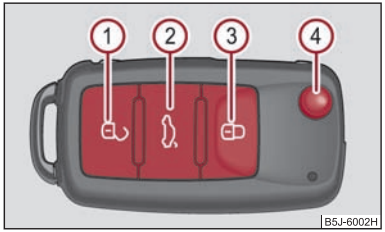


Fig. 30 Remote control key

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press the button (1) ⇒ fig. 30 for about 1 second.

Locking the vehicle

– Press button (3) for about 1 second.

Deactivating safe securing system

– Press button (3) twice in 2 seconds. Further information ⇒ page 36.

Boot lid remote release

– Press button (2) for about 1 second ⇒ fig. 30.

Folding out of the key

– Press button (4).

Folding up of the key

– Press button (4) and collapse the key bit in the housing.

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. The vehicle will lock again automatically if you unlock the vehicle using button (1) but do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally. ▶

The safe securing system along with the anti-theft alarm system* are, however, deactivated during these 30 seconds.

When the vehicle is unlocked or locked, the interior lights in the door contact are automatically switched on or off.

Display of the locking

The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.

If the vehicle is locked by pressing the button (3) and some doors or the boot lid are not closed, the turn signal lights flash only after closing.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

- Operate the radio remote control only when the doors and boot lid are closed and you have visual contact with the vehicle.
- Once in the vehicle, you must not press the lock button of the master key before inserting the key into the ignition lock in order to avoid the vehicle being inadvertently locked and the anti-theft alarm system* being switched on. Should this happen, press the unlock button of the master key. ■

Synchronisation of the remote control

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked by actuating the remote control system then it is possible that the code in the key and the control unit in the vehicle are no longer synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the radio-operated key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery on the remote control was replaced.

This means it is necessary to synchronise the code as follows:

- press any button on the remote control;
- pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute. ■

Anti-theft alarm system*

Description

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

How is the alarm system activated?

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically when the unlocked vehicle is locked with the key inserted in the driver's door or with the remote control key. It is activated 30 seconds after locking the door.

How is the alarm system deactivated?

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated if the vehicle is unlocked by only using the radio remote control. The anti-theft alarm system is reactivated if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after transmitting the radio signal.

Once you unlock the vehicle by inserting the key into the driver door you then have to insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after opening the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds.

When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:

- bonnet;
- boot lid;
- doors;
- ignition lock;
- vehicle interior* ⇒ page 42;
- Angle of the vehicle* ⇒ page 42;
- Decoupling of the attached trailer;

- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

How is the alarm switched off?

You switch the alarm off if you unlock the vehicle with the radio remote control or if you switch the ignition on.

Note

- The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years. More detailed information is available by a specialist garage.
- Before leaving the car, check that all the doors, windows and the electric sliding/tilting roof* are properly closed in order to ensure that the anti-theft alarm system is fully operational.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receiver unit precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles. ■

Interior monitor* and Towing protection monitoring*

The interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring detect movements inside the vehicle interior and then trigger the alarm.

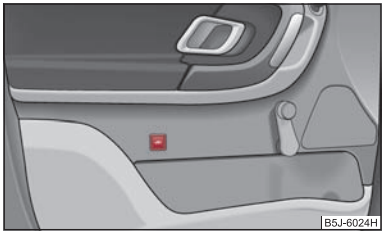


Fig. 31 Interior monitor pushbutton

The interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring are operated with the button. You can switch the interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring off if there is a possibility that movements from (e.g. children or animals) inside the vehicle interior or if the vehicle must be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed, might trigger the alarm.

Switch off the interior monitor and towing protection monitoring

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press the button on the driver door ⇒ fig. 31.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds. The interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring are switched off.

The interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring are switched on again automatically the next time the car is locked.

Note

- You can also switch off the interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring, by deactivating the safe securing system ⇒ page 36.
- When the ignition key is removed or a door is opened, the symbol in the button lights up red.
- Lighting up of the symbol in the button does not confirm that the interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring are switched on. ■

Electrical power windows*

Buttons for electrical power windows

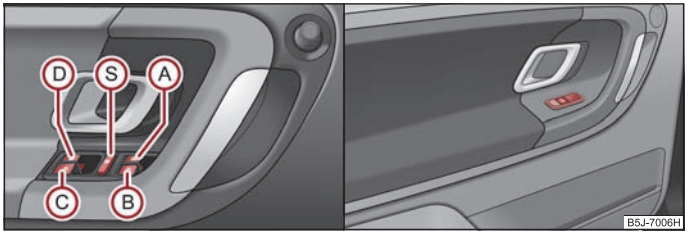


Fig. 32 Buttons on the driver's door / Buttons on the rear doors

The power windows operate only when ignition is switched on.

Opening a window

- A window is opened by pressing lightly on the respective button in the door. The process stops when one releases the button.
- Additionally you can open the window automatically (fully opened) by pressing the button up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing a window

- A window is closed through pulling lightly on the respective button in the door. The closing process stops when one releases the button.
- Additionally you can close the window automatically (fully closed) by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The buttons for the individual windows are located in the operating part of the armrest of the driver's door ⇒ fig. 32, front passenger door and on the rear doors*.

Buttons for the power windows in the armrest for the driver

(A) Button for the power window in the driver's door

(B) Button for the power window in the front passenger's door

(C) Button for the power window in the rear door on the right*

(D) Button for the power window in the rear door on the left*

(S) Safety pushbutton*

Safety pushbutton*

You can deactivate the buttons for power windows at rear doors by pressing the safety pushbutton (S) ⇒ fig. 32. The buttons for power windows at rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton (S) again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light in the safety switch (S) lights up.

WARNING

- **If you lock the vehicle from the outside, do not leave any person in the vehicle since it is no longer possible to open the windows from the inside in an emergency.**
- **The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 44. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimeters. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!**

Caution

It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) (S) ⇒ fig. 32 when children are being transported on the rear seats.

Note

In the event of a freezing up of the windscreen, first of all eliminate the ice ⇒ page 153 and then operate the power windows otherwise the power window mechanism could be damaged.

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds. ■

Force limiter of the power windows

The electrically operated power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimeters.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimeters.

You must try to close the window once again within 10 seconds after the window has gone down twice, even if the obstacle was not yet removed, the closing process is stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off, if you attempt to close the window within the next 10 seconds - **the window closes now with full strength!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ WARNING

You should take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

Window convenience operation

You can open and close the window with power windows as follows when unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Opening a window

– Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position or press the unlock button of the radio remote control until all the windows are opened.

Closing a window

– Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position or press the lock button of the radio remote control until all the windows are closed.

You can interrupt the opening or closing operation of the windows immediately by releasing the key or the lock button.

⚠ WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 44. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimeters. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

Operational faults

Electrically operated power windows do not operate

If the battery of the car has been disconnected and then reconnected, the electrically operated power windows do not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the relevant switch **top** and hold it pressed as long as necessary until the window is closed.
- Release the switch.
- Press once again the relevant switch **top** and hold it pressed for approx. 3 seconds.

Operation in winter

Ice accumulating on the surface of the windows during the winter may result in a greater resistance when closing the windows and the window may stop and go down several centimetres ▶

Proceed as follows to close the window fully:

- Switch on the ignition;
- Press the relevant switch at the top and hold it pressed as long as necessary until the window is closed.
- If the window goes down/stops, repeat the cycle (it is necessary to put the force limiter out of operation ⇒ page 44 - now the window closes with full force!)

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 44. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimeters. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

Panorama roof*

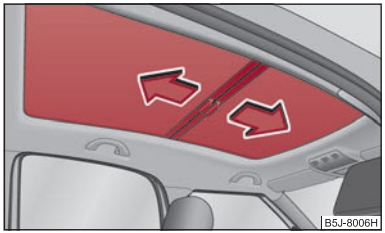


Fig. 33 Panorama roof: Open sun screen

The interior compartment can be brightened through the panorama roof out of tinted glass. The panorama roof can be exposed or covered over with the sun screen ⇒ fig. 33. For complete covering of the panorama roof, the sun screen must be pushed into its end position.

Please pay attention to the following guideline if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle ⇒ ⚠ in "Roof load" on page 70. ■

Lights and Visibility

Lights

Switching lights on and off

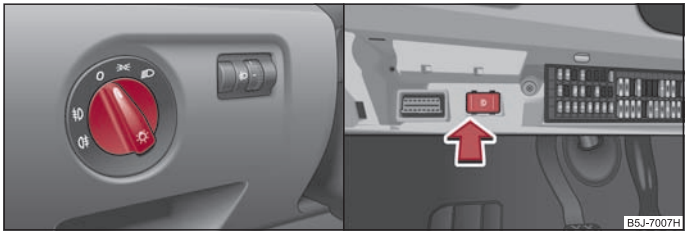


Fig. 34 Dash panel: Light switch / Switch for daylight driving lights

Switching on side lights

– Turn the light switch ⇒ fig. 34 into position ≣D.

Switching on the low beam and main beam

– Turn the light switch into position ≣D.

– Press the main beam lever forward in order to switch on the main beam ⇒ page 50, fig. 38.

Switching off lights (except daylight driving lights)

– Turn the light switch into position O.

During the engine start, the low beam lights are switched off automatically.

On vehicles fitted with **right-hand steering*** the position of the switches differs to some extent from the position shown on ⇒ fig. 34. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical, however.

WARNING

Never drive with side lights on – risk of accident! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. In this case, always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

- An audible warning will sound if you withdraw the ignition key and open the driver's door when the vehicle lights are still on.
- The acoustic warning signal is switched off over the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off). The vehicle can be parked with the side lights on.
- If the car is parked for a lengthy period, we recommend switching off all lights, or leaving only the parking lights switched on.
- The switching on of the described lights should only be undertaken in accordance with the legal requirements.
- In the event of cool or humid weather conditions, the headlights can be misted up from inside.
  – The temperature difference between interior and external area of the headlight lenses is decisive.
  – When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period. The headlight lenses can possibly mist up at the border areas.
  – It also concerns reverse light and turn signal lights.
  – This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system. ■

DAY LIGHT*

In some countries, the national legal provisions require that the vehicles are equipped with the function daylight driving lights. ▶

Switching on daylight driving lights*

- Remove the cover of the fuse box on the left side of the dash panel ⇒ page 191.
- Turn the light switch into position O ⇒ page 46, fig. 34.
- Switch on the switch for daylight driving lights ⇒ page 46, fig. 34.

Switching off daylight driving lights*

- Switch off the switch for the daylight driving lights ⇒ page 46, fig. 34.
- Turn the light switch to the position side lights or low beam ⇒ page 46, fig. 34.

When the daylight driving lights are switched on, also the low beam shines together with the side lights (valid for vehicles without fog lights).

On vehicles which are fitted with bulbs for daylight driving lights [6] in the fog lights*, the side lights and the low beam [7] do not come on when activating the function daylight driving lights. ■

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function*

For a better cornering illumination, the halogen projector headlights with cornering light function are set in the optimal position in line with the vehicle speed and the steering angle.

If the warning light comes on while driving or after the ignition is switched on, a fault is confirmed.

WARNING

If there is a fault in the halogen projector headlights with cornering light function, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster. The halogen projector headlights with cornering light function are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. Thus the illuminated length of the road is shortened. Drive carefully and have the car inspected immediately by a specialist garage. ■

[6] Valid for vehicles Scout.
[7] Only valid for some countries.

Tourist light*

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function

This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system, driving on the left/right, without dazzling the oncoming vehicles. When the mode "tourist light" is active, the side to side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

Activating tourist light

Before activating the tourist light, the following conditions must be met:

Ignition switched off, light switched off (light switch in the position O), control dial for the headlamp beam adjustment in the position **0**, no gear engaged or selector lever in the position **N** (automatic gearbox), tourist light deactivated.

- Switch on the ignition.

Up to 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on:

- Turn the light switch to the position ⇒ page 46.
- Engage the reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever into the position **R** (automatic gearbox).
- Turn the control dial for headlamp beam adjustment from the position **0** to the position **3** ⇒ page 49.

Deactivating tourist light

Before deactivating the tourist light, the following conditions must be met:

Ignition switched off, light switched off (light switch in the position O), control dial for the headlamp beam adjustment in the position **3**, no gear engaged or selector lever in the position **N** (automatic gearbox), tourist light activated.

- Switch on the ignition.

Up to 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on:

- Turn the light switch to the position ⇒ page 46.
- Engage the reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever into the position **R** (automatic gearbox).
- Turn the control dial for headlamp beam adjustment from the position **3** to the position **0** ⇒ page 49.

The adaptation of the halogen projector headlights must be performed as follows ⇒ page 146. ■

Fog lights*

Fig. 35 Dash panel: Light switch

Switching on the fog lights

– First of all turn the light switch into position or ⇒ fig. 35.

– Pull the light switch out to the **first** detent (1).

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on ⇒ page 25. ■

Fog lights with the function "CORNER"*

The fog lights with the function "CORNER" are designed for a better illumination of the surrounding area near the vehicle when corning, parking etc.

The fog lights with the function "CORNER" are adjusted according to the steering angle or after switching on the turn signal light [8] in the following circumstances:

- the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running or it moves with a speed of maximum 40 km/h;
- the daylight driving lights are not switched on;
- Low beam switched on.

A fault in the system of the fog lights with the function "CORNER" is confirmed by the warning light lighting up.

Note

If the fog lights are switched on, the function of the lights "CORNER" is not active. ■

Rear fog light

Switching on the rear fog light

– First of all turn the light switch into position or ⇒ fig. 35.

– Pull the switch into position (2). The fog lights* light up at the same time.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights*, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position and is pulled out directly to the position (2). This switch does not have two positions, but only one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on ⇒ page 25.

Only the rear fog light of the trailer lights up if the vehicle is fitted with a **towing device from Škoda original accessories**and when you are towing a trailer which is fitted with the rear fog light.

Caution

The rear fog light should only be switched on if visibility is particularly poor (conform with any varying legal provisions) to avoid dazzling vehicles behind your vehicle. ■

[8] If both switch on versions are conflicting, for example if the steering wheel is turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Headlamp range adjustment

Once the low beam is switched on you can then adapt the range of the headlights to the load of the vehicle.

Fig. 36 Dash panel: Lights and Visibility

– Turn the control dial ⇒ fig. 36 until you have adjusted the low beam so that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Settings

The positions correspond approximately to the following vehicle loads:

- (–) Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- (1) All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- (2) All seats occupied, luggage compartment laden.
- (3) Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment laden.

Caution

Set the headlight beam adjustment in such a way as to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. ■

Switch for hazard warning lights

Fig. 37 Dash panel: Switch for hazard warning lights

– Press switch ⇒ fig. 37 to switch the hazard warning light system on or off.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The indicator light for the turn signals and the indicator light in the switch also flash at the same time. You can also switch on the hazard warning light system if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically if an airbag is deployed in the event of an accident.

Please comply with any legal requirements when using the hazard warning light system.

Note

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example:

- you encounter traffic congestion;
- your vehicle breaks down or an emergency situation occurs. ■

The turn signal ⇦ ⇨ and main beam lever

The parking lights and headlight flasher are also switched on and off using the turn signal and main beam lever.

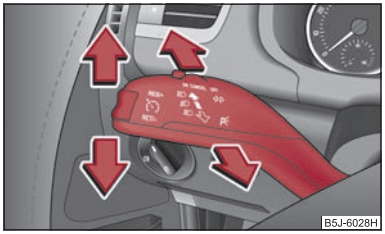


Fig. 38 Turn signal and main beam lever

The turn signal and main beam lever perform the following functions:

Right ⇨ and left ⇦ turn signal light

- Push the lever upwards or downwards ⇒ fig. 38.
- If you only wish to flash three times (the so-called convenience turn signal*), push the lever briefly up to the upper or lower pressure point and release it.
- Turn signal for changing lanes - in order to only flash briefly, move the lever up or down to the pressure point and hold it in this position.

Main beam

- Switch on the low beam.
- Push the lever forwards.
- Pull the lever back into the initial position in order to switch the main beam off again.

Headlight flasher

- Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) - the main beam and warning light in the instrument cluster come on.

Parking light

- Switch off the ignition.
- Push the lever up or down - the right-hand or left-hand parking light is switched on.

Information concerning the function of the lights.

- The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning light ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster also flashes.
- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- The side light and rear light on the appropriate side of the vehicle are switched on when the **parking light** is selected. The parking light function only operates if the ignition is switched off.
- An acoustic warning signal will sound when the driver's door is opened if the lever is not in the middle position after removing the ignition key from the ignition lock. The acoustic warning signal will stop just as soon as the driver's door is closed.

Caution

Use main beam or the headlight flasher only if this does not risk dazzling other road users.

Note

- If you have switched on the right or left turn signal light and you switch off the ignition, the parking light is not automatically switched on.
- Use only in accordance with the legal requirements the described lighting and signal systems. ■

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting and storage compartment on front passenger side

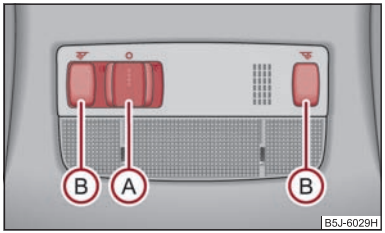


Fig. 39 Detail of the headliner: front interior lighting

Door contact switching mechanism (front and rear* doors)

- Press the switch (A) to the right into position ⇒ fig. 39.
- On the version without reading lights press the switch (A) into the middle position .

Switching the interior light on

- Press the switch (A) to the left into position .

Switching the interior light off

- Press the switch (A) into the middle position **O**.
- On the version without reading lights press the switch (A) to the right, the symbol **O** appears.

Reading lights

- Press on one of the switches (B) ⇒ fig. 39 in order to switch the right or left reading light on or off.

Lighting of storage compartment on the front passenger side

- When opening the flap of the storage compartment on the front passenger side the lighting in the storage compartment comes on.
- The light switches on automatically when the parking light is switched on and goes out when the flap is closed.

On vehicles with central locking, the interior light is switched on for about 30 seconds when the vehicle is unlocked, when a door is opened or after withdrawing the ignition key (if the relevant switch is in the door contact position). The inner light goes out out immediately after the ignition is switched on.

A time delay switch* causes the inner lighting on vehicles without a central locking system stays on for a few seconds after the doors have been closed. The inner light goes out out immediately after the ignition is switched on.

The interior lighting is switched off after about 10 minutes when a door has been left open in order to avoid discharging the battery of the vehicle. ■

Rear interior lighting*

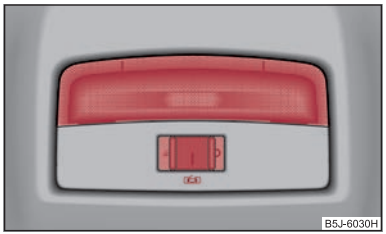


Fig. 40 Roof liner light

The rear interior lighting ⇒ fig. 40 is actuated by moving the switch to the symbol , O or to the middle position .

The same principles apply for the interior lighting at the rear as for the for the interior lighting at the front ⇒ page 51. ▶

Note

We recommend having the bulb replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Luggage compartment light

The lighting comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the lid remains open for more than about 10 minutes, the luggage compartment lighting switches off automatically. ■

Visibility

Rear window heater

Fig. 41 Switch for rear window heater

– You can switch the rear window heater on or off by pressing the switch ⇒ fig. 41 - the indicator light in the switch comes on or goes out.

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after 7 minutes.

If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater is switched off automatically, the warning light flashes in the button.

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist, the heating should be switched off. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy ⇒ page 145, "Saving electricity". ■

Sun visors

Fig. 42 Sun visor: swivelling out

You can pull the sun visor for the driver or front passenger out of the fixture and swivel it toward the door in the direction of the arrow (1) ⇒ fig. 42.

The vanity mirrors* for the driver and front passenger, which are integrated in the sun visors, are provided with covers. Push the cover in direction of arrow (2).

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled to the side windows into the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed. ■

Windshield wiper and wash system

Windshield wiper

You can operate the windscreen wipers and automatic wipe/wash using the windscreen wiper lever.

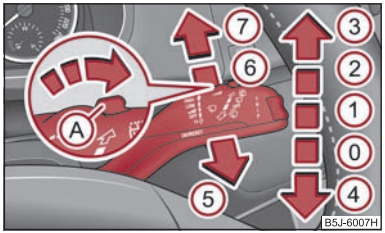


Fig. 43 Windscreen wiper lever

The windscreen wiper lever ⇒ fig. 43 has the following positions:

Finger-operated wiping

– If you wish to wipe the windscreen only **briefly**, push the lever into the sprung position (4).

Intermittent wiping

– Position the lever up into position (1).

– Set with the switch (A) the desired break between the individual wiper strokes

Slow wipe

– Position the lever up into position (2).

Fast wipe

– Position the lever up into position (3).

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position (5), the wash system and the windscreen wipers will operate.

– Release the lever. The windscreen wash system stops and the wiper continues for another 1 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

Wiping the rear window pane

– Push the lever away from the steering wheel into position (6) ⇒ fig. 43, the wide-screen wiper will operate every 6 seconds.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window pane

– Push the lever away from the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position (7), the windscreen wiper and wash system will operate.

– Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). **The lever will stay in position after releasing it** (6).

Switching windscreen wipers off

– Move the lever back into its home position (0).

The windscreen wipers and the windscreen washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

The rear window will be wiped again if the window wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

The windscreen washer nozzles are heated* when the ignition is switched on.

Top up with wash liquid ⇒ page 172.

WARNING

- **Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving ⇒ page 54.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.**
- **In the event of a freezing up of the windscreen, first of all eliminate the ice ⇒ page 153 and then operate the windscreen wiper otherwise the windscreen wiper blades could be damaged.**

Caution

In frosty weather, please first of all check whether the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen before switching them on. Switching on windscreen wipers when the blades are frozen to the windscreen may result in damage both to the blades and the motor of the windscreen wipers!

Note

The content of the windscreen wiper reservoir is 3.5 litres. On vehicles which are equipped with a headlight cleaning system*, the content of the reservoir is 5.4 litres. ■

Headlight cleaning system*

The headlights are being cleaned after the windscreen washer system has been operated for the fifth time, the low beam or main beam are switched on as well as the windscreen wiper lever is held in the position (5) ⇒ page 53, fig. 43 for about 1 second.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 154, "The headlight lenses".

You should remove any snow from the fixtures of the washer nozzles and clear ice in winter with a de-icing spray in order to ensure proper operation of the cleaning system. ■

Replacing wiper blades for the windscreen wipers

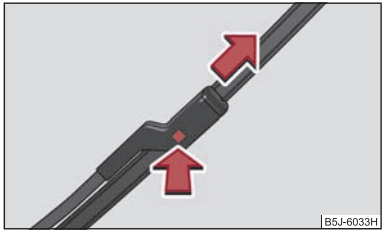


Fig. 44 Wiper blade for the windscreen wiper

Taking off the wiper blade

- Fold windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- Press the locking button, in order to unlock the wiper blade and pull off in the direction of arrow.

Attaching a wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade until it locks up to the stop.
- Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

Wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax.

Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windscreen by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **degrease** the lips of the wiper blades after every pass through an **automatic vehicle wash system**.

WARNING

- **If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.**

WARNING (continued)

- **You should clean the wiper blades regularly with a windscreen cleaner in order to avoid any smears. Clean a wiper blade with a sponge or cloth if it is very dirty, for example from insect residues.**
- **Replace the wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. The wiper blades are available from specialist garages.** ■

Replacing the wiper blade on the rear window wiper

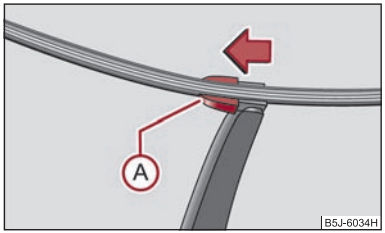


Fig. 45 Wiper blade for rear window

Taking off the wiper blade

- Fold windscreen wiper arm out from the windscreen and position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm ⇒ fig. 45.
- Hold the window wiper arm at the top end with one hand.
- With the other hand unlock the locking button (A) in the direction of arrow and remove the wiper blade.

Attaching a wiper blade

- Position the wiper blade onto the wiper arm and lock the locking button (A).
- Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.

The same remarks apply here as for ⇒ page 54. ■

Rear mirror

You can adjust the exterior mirrors electrically.*

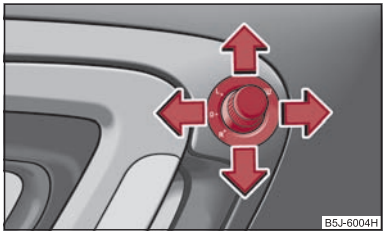


Fig. 46 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

Adjust the rear mirror before commencing to drive so that there is a clear view to the rear.

Dimming the interior mirror

- Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror toward rear (the lever on the interior mirror must point forwards in it home position).

Heating of the external mirror*

- Turn the rotary knob to position ⇒ fig. 46.

Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror*

- Turn the rotary knob to position **L**. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror*

- Turn the rotary knob to position **R**. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

The vehicle can also be equipped with a second rear mirror*, which is attached above the inner main rear mirror. The second rear mirror* enables an extensive look into the area of the rear seats, e.g. to check on the seated passengers. You can adjust it in the horizontal as well as vertical direction regardless of the inner main rear mirror. ▶

The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

- **Convex (curved outward) or spherical (differently curved) exterior mirrors increase the vision field. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are only of limited use, therefore, for estimating distances to the following vehicles.**
- **Use whenever possible the interior rear mirror, for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.**

Note

- Do not touch the surfaces of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- You can set the exterior mirrors by hand, if the power setting function fails at any time by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact your specialist garage if a fault exists with the power setting of the exterior mirrors. ■

Seats and Storage

Front seats

Basic information

The front seats have a wide range of different settings and can thus be matched to the physical characteristics of the driver and front passenger. Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for:

- safely and quickly reaching the controls;
- a relaxed, fatigue-free body position;
- **achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

The chapters which follow describe the procedure which you should adopt for adjusting the seats.

WARNING

- **Never transport more occupants than the maximum seating in the vehicle.**
- **Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened ⇒ page 126, "Transporting children safely" with a suitable restraint system.**
- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. This is particularly important for the front seat passenger. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly**

WARNING (continued)

protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.

- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate.**
- **Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except those provided for this purpose (e.g. child safety seat) – risk of accident!** ■

Adjusting the front seats

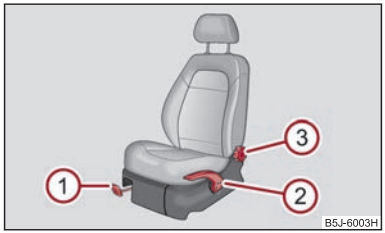


Fig. 47 Controls at seat

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

– Pull the lever (1) ⇒ fig. 47 up and push the seat into the desired position.

– Release the lever (1) and push the seat further until the lock is heard to engage.

Adjusting height of seat*

– Lift the seat if required by pulling or pumping lever (2) upwards.

– Lower the seat if required by pushing or pumping lever (2) downwards. ▶

Adjust the angle of the seat backrest

– Relieve any pressure on the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the hand-wheel (3) to adjust the angle of the backrest.

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

WARNING

- **Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of injury!**
- **Take care when adjusting the seat! Adjusting the seat without care can lead to bruises or injuries.**
- **The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!** ■

Head restraints

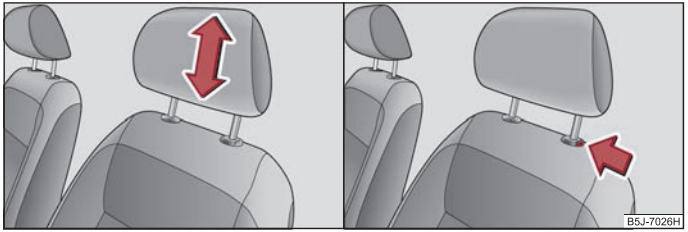


Fig. 48 Head restraint: Adjusting / pulling out

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Adjusting the height of a head restraint

– Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push the head restraint in the direction of axle of the metal guide rods, in the direction of arrow to the top or to the bottom ⇒ fig. 48 on the left.

– Move the head restraint downwards if required by pressing the locking button ⇒ fig. 48 on the right and by pressing with the other hand the head restraint down-wards.

Removing and installing a head restraint

– Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.

– Press the locking button in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 48 and pull the head restraint out.

– To re-insert the head restraint, push it down into the seat backrest far enough until you hear the locking button engage.

The position of the front, rear outer head restraints and the rear middle head restraint* is adjustable for height.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants ⇒ page 110.

WARNING

- **The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.**
- **Do not drive under any circumstance with removed head restraints – risk of injury!**
- **If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.** ■

Heating the front seats*

Fig. 49 Rocker switch: Front seat heating

You can electrically heat the seat cushions and the seat backrests of the front seats.

- By pressing the rocker switch in the position (1) or (2) switch on the front seat heating to 25% or 100% of its power output ⇒ fig. 49.
- To switch off the heating shift the rocker switch into the horizontal position.

WARNING

- **If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating of the driver or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.**

Caution

- You should not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points in order to avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters.
- Do not use the seat heating if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects are fastened or stored on them, for example a child seat, a bag etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats moist ⇒ page 156.

Note

The seat heating should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity. ■

Rear seats

Adjusting seats in forward/back direction

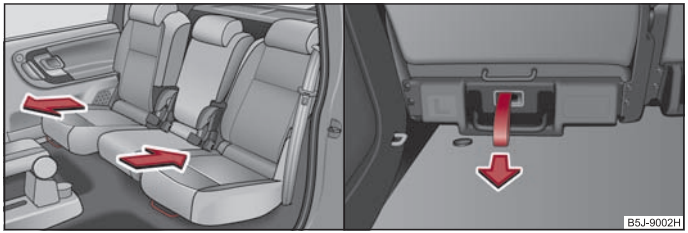


Fig. 50 Releasing at the front / rear

To enlarge the luggage compartment, the outer rear seats can be pushed forwards, folded fully forwards or the seats can be removed.

Moving seats in forward/back direction

- Pull up the lever ⇒ fig. 50 on the left or on the release loop ⇒ fig. 50 on the right and move the seat into the desired position.

Note

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 111, “Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats”. ■

Adjusting the seat backrest

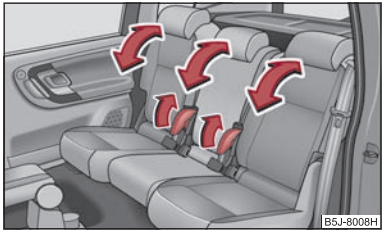


Fig. 51 Adjusting the seat backrest

Adjust the angle of the seat backrest

– Pull the lever ⇒ fig. 51 and adjust the desired angle of the seat backrest. ■

Folding seats forwards

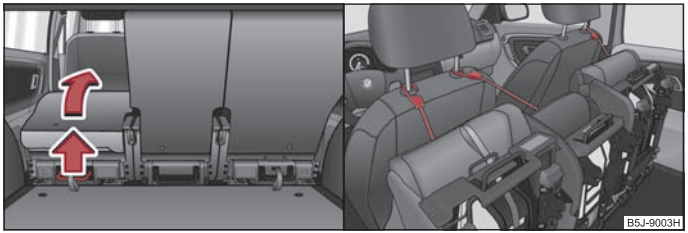


Fig. 52 Fold seat fully forwards / Secure folded forward seats

Fold seats fully forwards and secure

– Open the guide loop for the seat belt on the side of the outer seats and put the belt tongue into the opening on the respective side trim panel - safety holder.

– Move the seat as far as possible to the rear ⇒ page 59.

– Pull the lever ⇒ fig. 51 and fold the seat backrest fully fowards.

– Pull the lever ⇒ fig. 52 up and then fold the seat fully forwards.

– Secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt to a guide rod of the head restraint for the front seat ⇒ fig. 52 on the right.

WARNING

- **Immediately secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt to a guide rod of the head restraint for the front seat - there is a risk of injury as soon as the vehicle starts off.**
- **If the seat is not in the rear end position, damage can occur to the locking bolts if the seat is unlocked.**

Note

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 111, “Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats”. ■

Removing seats

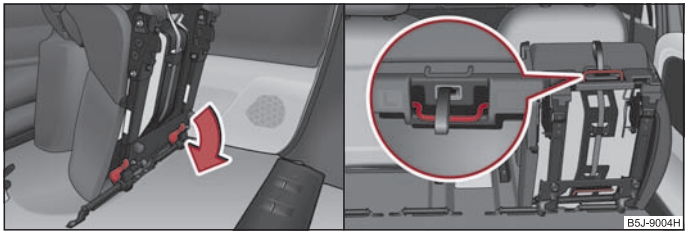


Fig. 53 Unlocking the folded forward seat / carrying handle on the seat cushion

Unlocking and removing seats

– Unlock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 53.

– Remove the seat with the carrying handle on the seat cushion ⇒ fig. 53 on the right.

Note

- The outer seats are not replaceable alternatively. In the rear area the left seat is marked with the letter L and the right seat with the letter R.
- Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 111. ■

Adjusting seats in crosswise direction

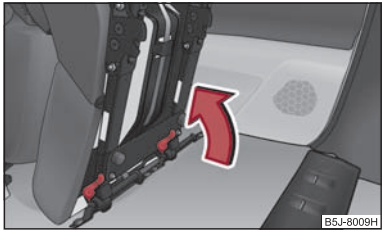


Fig. 54 Locking the seat

Moving seats in crosswise direction

- Remove the middle seat ⇒ page 60.
- Fold the outer seat forwards ⇒ page 60 and lock it ⇒ page 60, fig. 53.
- Move the folded forward and unlocked seat on the guide towards the middle of the vehicle up to the stop.
- Lock the seat at the end of the guide ⇒ fig. 54. ■

Move seats into the initial position

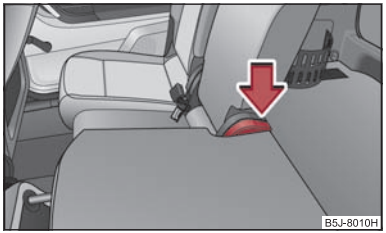


Fig. 55 Folding the seat backrest back into position

Locking seats and folding back into position

- If the seat is removed, first of all position it on the guide and lock the seat ⇒ fig. 54. Check for yourself that the seat is correctly locked by pulling it up.
- Fold the seat into the horizontal position until it is heard to lock. Check for yourself that the seat can no longer be lifted by pulling it up.
- Push the lever ⇒ fig. 55 and fold the backrest back into position. Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged.
- Take the belt tongue out of the safety holder.
- Close the guide loop of the seat belt on the side of the outer seats until it is heard to lock.

WARNING

- **The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.**
- **The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking – risk of injury!**
- **When folding the seat backrest always make sure that it has safely locked into position, this is confirmed by the position and a visible marking on the cover of the lever.**

Note

The seat belts of the outer seats must always be guided through the guide loops next to the head restraints. Otherwise the seat belts can slip behind the seat. ■

Folding table on the middle seat backrest*

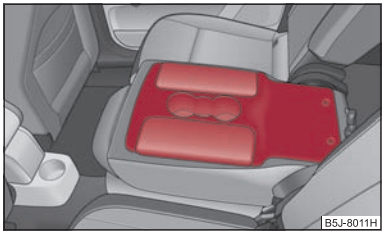


Fig. 56 Rear seats: Armrest

- The middle seat backrest can be folded ⇒ page 60, "Folding seats forwards" forwards and used as armrest or table with cup holder ⇒ fig. 56.
- You can place two cups or beverage cans into the recesses.

Note

If the middle rear seat backrest should be folded forward for lengthy periods, then make sure that the belt locks are not located below it - this can result in permanent damage to the upholstery. ■

Pedals

Concerning a secure depressing of the pedal, you should use only footmats from the Škoda genuine accessories.

Operation of the pedals must not be hindered!

WARNING

- **Greater pedal distances may be needed when there is a fault in the brake system.**
- **Do not place any footmats or other additional floor coverings in the area of the pedals in order to ensure that all the pedals can be fully depressed and are able to return unobstructed to their initial position – risk of accident!**
- **There must be no objects on the floor which could roll under the pedals. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident!** ■

luggage compartment

Loading the luggage compartment

Please observe the following in the interest of having good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute the items of luggage as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or the fixing net* ⇒ page 63.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries. The magnitude of the kinetic energy depends on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the object. The speed at which the vehicle is travelling is in this case the more significant factor.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg. You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "bullet" is flying through the interior compartment and hits an occupant. ▶

WARNING

- **Stow the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.**
- **Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, the objects which are thrown back can injure the occupants – hazard.**
- **Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.**
- **The items carried in the luggage compartment should be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if there are any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres undertaken – risk of injury!**
- **When transporting fastened objects which are sharp and dangerous in the luggage compartment enlarged by folding the rear seats forward or removing the rear seats, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats ⇒ page 111, "Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats".**
- **If the rear seats next to the folded forward seat are occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that a folding back of the seat is prevented in case of a rear collision.**
- **Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!**
- **On no account exceed the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Never transport occupants in the luggage compartment.**

Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects sliding in this area.

Note

- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load ⇒ page 173, fig. 143.
- The circulation of air in the vehicle helps to prevent the windows from misting up. The used air streams out through the air venting slits which are located under the bumper in the luggage compartment. Check for yourself that the air venting slits are not covered. ■

Vehicles of category N1

On vehicles of the category N1, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 – 4) must be used for fastening the load. ■

Fastening elements

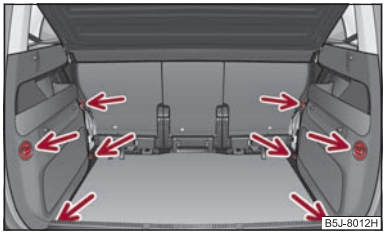


Fig. 57 Luggage compartment: Lashing eyes and fastening elements

Fixing eyes are located on the sides of the loading area for lashing the goods to be loaded ⇒ fig. 57.

You can also attach fixing nets* to these fixing eyes for holding small objects.

The fixing nets* and the installation instruction are located in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **The load to be transported must be fixed in place in such a way that it cannot move during the journey and when braking.**
- **If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. In order to prevent the items of luggage being thrown** ▶

WARNING (continued)

forward, always use suitable lashing straps which are firmly attached to the lashing eyes. Never attach a child seat to the lashing eyes! ■

Folding hooks

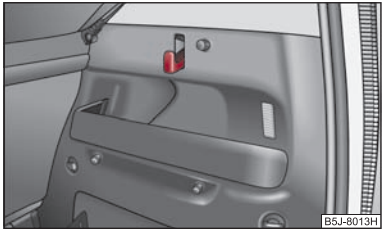


Fig. 58 Luggage compartment: folding hooks

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 58.

An item of luggage weighing up to 10 kg can be attached to the hook.

WARNING

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 62. ■

Fixing nets - Net programme*

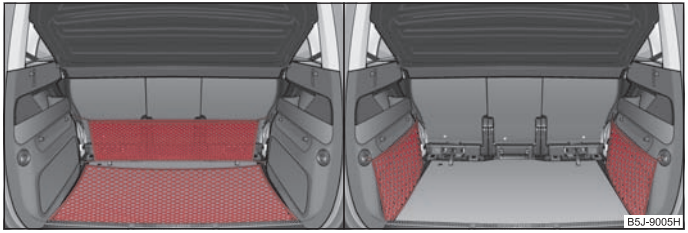


Fig. 59 Fixing net: double horizontal pocket, floor fixing net / double vertical pockets

Fixing examples of the fixing net as double horizontal pocket, floor fixing net ⇒ fig. 59 and double vertical pockets ⇒ fig. 59 on the right.

The fixing nets* and the installation instruction are located in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **The whole strength of the net makes it possible to load the pocket with objects of up to 1,5 kg in weight. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury and net damage!**
- **The load to be transported must be fixed in place in such a way that it cannot move during the journey and when braking.**

Caution

Do not place any objects with sharp edges in the nets - risk of net damage. ■

Fixing floor covering of the luggage compartment

You can lean against the raised floor cover between the backrests of the rear seats and the luggage compartment cover, as if one needs to reach the spare wheel*. ■

The luggage compartment cover

You can use the luggage compartment cover behind the head restraints for storing light and soft items.

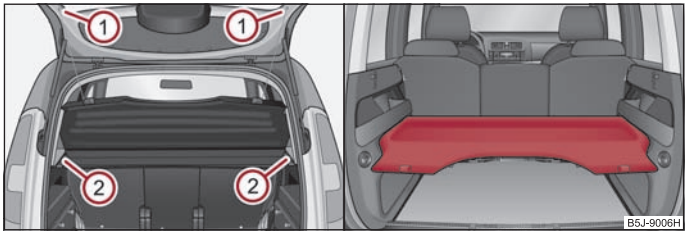


Fig. 60 Removal of the luggage compartment cover / Luggage compartment cover in the lower position

The luggage compartment cover can be removed as required if one must transport bulky goods.

- Unhook the support straps (1) ⇒ fig. 60.
- Slightly raise the luggage compartment cover.
- Remove the luggage compartment cover from the holder (2) by pulling to the rear or with adequate blows to the bottom side of the cover.
- Install again by pushing the luggage compartment cover forwards into the holder (2) and hanging the support straps (1) on the boot lid.

The luggage compartment cover can also be put into the lower position on the supporting elements ⇒ fig. 60 on the right.

The procedure of installing or removing is identical.

The luggage compartment cover is foreseen for storage of small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

Note

When opening the boot lid, lift the luggage compartment cover - risk that objects placed in this area can slip forward! ■

Static separation net*

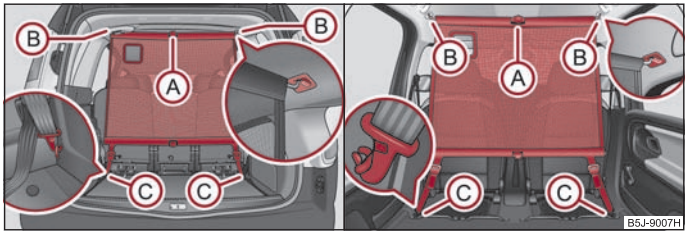


Fig. 61 Use of the static separation net behind the rear seats / behind the front seats

Install the static separation net behind the front seats or the rear seats.

Install the static separation net behind the rear seats

- Remove the luggage compartment cover.
- Take the separation net out of the bag.
- Unfold both parts of the cross rod until they are heard to engage. ▶

- Insert the cross rod into the mount (B) first on the one side and push the cross rod forward. In the same way, fix the cross rod to the other side of the vehicle, mount (B) ⇒ page 65, fig. 61.
- Hang the carabines (C) at the ends of the strap into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
- Pull the strap through the tensioning clasp, first of all on the one side and then on the other side.

Remove the static separation net behind the rear seats

- Slacken the bands on both sides and take off the carabines (C) ⇒ page 65, fig. 61.
- Push the cross rod first of all on the one side and then on the other side towards the rear.
- Take the cross rod out of the mounts (B).

Pack static separation net

- Press the red button of the joint (A) - so that it releases.
- Put the separation net folded together in the bag and close it.
- Attach the bag with the aid of the plastic carabines to the eyes on the left and right luggage compartment trim panel.

Installing and removing the static separation net behind the front seats ⇒ page 65, fig. 61 on the right is carried out analogously as behind the rear seats. Use the eyes behind the front seats to attach the carabines. Remove the rear seats to enlarge the luggage compartment.

Installing and removing the static separation net behind the rear seats with variable loading floor* ⇒ page 66 is carried out analogously as behind the rear seats without variable loading floor. Use the lower eyes at the fixing wedges on the front part of the variable loading floor in order to attach the carabines. ■

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment*

Removing variable loading floor

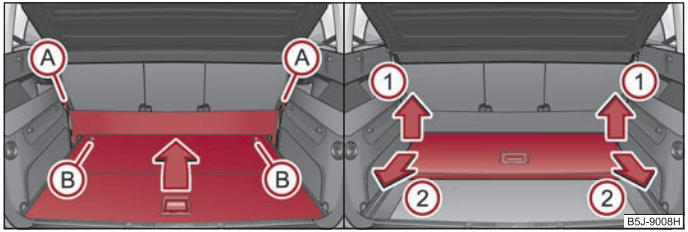


Fig. 62 Luggage compartment: Fold up variable loading floor / remove

The variable loading floor makes it easier to handle bulky goods and creates an even luggage compartment floor when the rear seats are folded forward. The maximum permissable surface load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Removing the variable loading floor

- Unhook the loops (A) ⇒ fig. 62 of the elastic partition out of the fixing points.
- Unlock the variable loading floor by turning the locking bolts (B) by approx. 180° to the left ⇒ fig. 62.
- You can fold together the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Lift up the variable loading floor in direction of arrow (1) ⇒ fig. 62 and take out the loading floor by pulling in direction of arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 62.

Installing the variable loading floor

- Place the variable loading floor once folded together onto the carrier rails.
- Fold open the variable loading floor.
- Lock the variable loading floor by turning the locking bolts (B) ⇒ fig. 62 by approx. 180° to the right.
- Attach the loops of the elastic partition to the fixing points. ▶

WARNING

Pay attention when installing that the carrier rails and the variable loading floor are correctly fixed, otherwise the occupants are at risk.

Note

If the variable loading floor* is installed, no flexible storage compartment or fixing net* can be installed. ■

Remove carrier rails

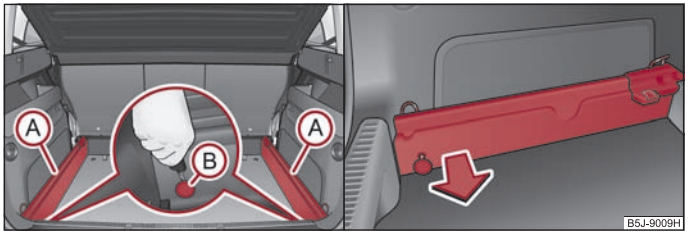


Fig. 63 Luggage compartment: Slacken check points / remove carrier rails

Install carrier rails

- Slacken the check point (B) on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver ⇒ fig. 63.
- Grasp the carrier rail (A) ⇒ fig. 63 on the right and take it out by pulling in direction of arrow. The carrier rail on the other side of the luggage compartment can be removed in the same way.

Install carrier rails

- Position the carrier rails on the sides of the luggage compartment.
- Press the check point on each carrier rail up to the stop.
- Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

WARNING

Pay attention when installing that the carrier rails and the variable loading floor are correctly fixed, otherwise the occupants are at risk. ■

Take out lateral carrier rail and fixing wedges

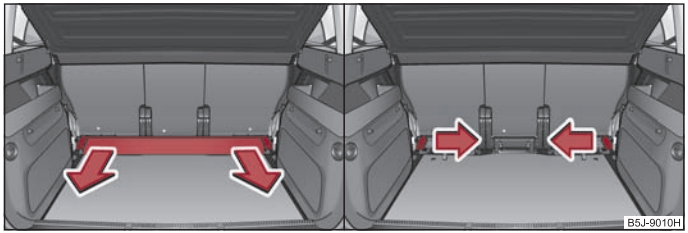


Fig. 64 Luggage compartment: Take out lateral carrier rail / Take out fixing wedges

Remove lateral carrier rail and fixing wedges

- Grasp the lateral carrier rail ⇒ fig. 64 and take it out by pulling in the direction of arrow.
- Grasp the fixing wedge ⇒ fig. 64 on the right and take it out by pulling in the direction of arrow. To remove the fixing wedge on the other side of the luggage compartment, proceed in the same way.

Install lateral carrier rail and fixing wedges

- Position the fixing wedges at the attachment points and press these up to stop in the direction of the luggage compartment sides.
- Insert the lateral carrier rail at an angle to the fixing wedges and press it up to the stop.
- Check the attachment of the lateral carrier rail by pulling it. ■

Divide the luggage compartment with variable loading floor*

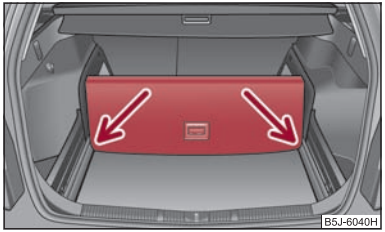


Fig. 65 Divide the luggage compartment

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor.

– Lift up the part with the holder and secure it by sliding it into the grooves ⇒ fig. 65. ■

Bicycle holder in the luggage compartment*

Install cross member

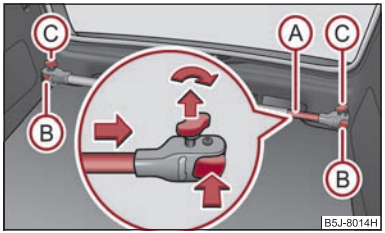


Fig. 66 Install cross member

– Remove the rear seats or fold the seats fully forwards, in order to make available the necessary space in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 60.

– Release the fixtures (B) at the ends of the cross member by **slightly pulling up** the securing screws (C).

– Position the cross member with the fixed (not pulled out) part onto the (in direction of travel) right lashing eye and then the pull-out part (A) onto the left lashing eye.

– Secure the fixture (B) to both sides and lock the fixing screws (C) in place.

– Tighten the fixing screws (C) up to the stop.

– Check the attachment of the cross member by pulling it.

⚠ WARNING

When transporting the bicycles in the luggage compartment, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the rear seats ⇒ page 111, "Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats". ■

Install bicycle carrier

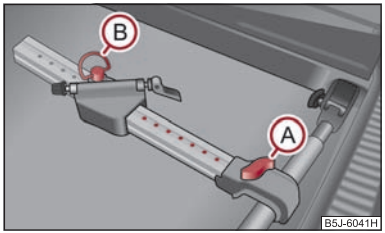


Fig. 67 Install bicycle carrier

– Position the approved bicycle carrier on the cross member, after pulling up the screw (A) push the frame side rail (alu-part) towards the cross member and screw the screw (A) into the nut ⇒ fig. 67.

– Slacken the screw (B) on the moveable part of the bicycle carrier and pull out, then position the moveable part of the carrier, depending on bicycle size, into one of the three possible positions.

– Insert the screw (B) into the desired position and tighten. ■

Put bicycle into the bicycle carrier

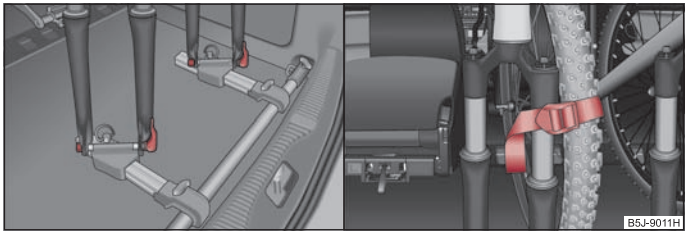


Fig. 68 Put in the bicycle / fastening the front wheel

- Remove the front wheel before putting the bicycle into the vehicle.
- Slacken the quick tension jack on the fixing axle of the bicycle carrier and adjust according to the width of the bicycle fork.
- Fit the bicycle fork onto the fixing axle and tighten with the quick tension jack ⇒ fig. 68.
- Fasten the removed front wheel with the fixing strap in the vehicle interior so that it does not result in any damage to the luggage compartment, bicycle or the stored items.

Note

If the front wheel is equipped with disc brake, attach the wheel in such a way that the brake disc is opposite the frame. ■

Secure the stability of the bicycles with a strap

Fig. 69 Securing the bicycles with clamps / with a strap

- To slacken the rubber part of the clamp, push both parts against each other and open the clamp.
- Position the clamp with the rubber part to the front (in direction of travel) as far as possible below the saddle rod and close the clamp ⇒ fig. 69.
- When transporting two bicycles tension the strap ⇒ fig. 69 between the saddle rods.
- Hang the carabines at the ends of the strap into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
- Pull the strap through the tensioning clasp, first of all on the one side and then on the other side.
- If it is necessary, the position of the bicycles in the vehicle can be additionally rectified.

WARNING

- **When transporting passengers and objects, which require the seats to be folded forwards, ensure the safety of the passengers being transported on the rear seats ⇒ page 111, "Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats".**
- **Place the bicycles in the bicycle carrier in such a position that no collision between the steering arm and the rear window can occur.** ■

The roof luggage rack system*

Roof rail*

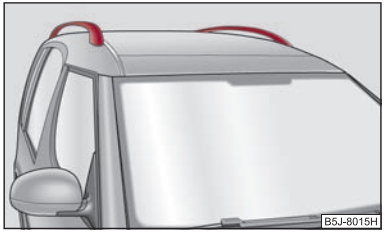


Fig. 70 Roof rail

Pay attention to the following points if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle:

- A special roof luggage rack system was developed for the vehicle, that is why you should only use a roof luggage rack which has been released for use by Škoda Auto.
- The roof rail is the basis for a complete roof luggage rack system. Separate additional holders are required for safety reasons for transporting luggage, bikes, surfboards, skis and boats.
- The basic version of the roof luggage rack system and further components can be obtained from Škoda original accessories.

Caution

- If you use other roof rack systems or if the roof bars are not properly fitted, then any damage which may result to your car is not covered by the warranty agreements. It is therefore essential to pay attention to the fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system.
- Ensure that the opened boot lid does not collide with the roof load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Note

If a roof rail is not fitted onto a vehicle at the works, it is obtainable from a specialist garage which carries out the professional fitting. ■

Roof load

Distribute weight evenly over the roof luggage rack system. The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

You cannot make full use of the permissible roof load if you use a roof luggage rack system with a lower load carrying capacity. The load transported on the roof luggage rack system must not exceed the weight limit which is stated in the fitting instructions.

WARNING

- **The items which you transport on the roof bar system must be reliably attached – risk of accident!**
- **You must on no account exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of your vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle change when you transport heavy or bulky items on the roof bar system as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity and the increased wind attack area – risk of accident! You must absolutely adapt your style of driving and the speed of the vehicle to the specific circumstances.** ■

Front cup holder

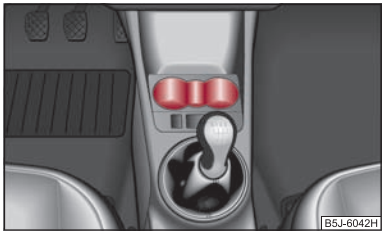


Fig. 71 Front centre console: Cup holder

You can place two cups or beverage cans into the recesses ⇒ fig. 71.

WARNING

- **Do not place any hot beverages into the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!**
- **Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). You might be injured by them in the event of an accident.**

Caution

Do not open the beverages in the cup holder while driving. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking and therefore the electrical components or the seat upholstery can be damaged. ■

Rear cup holder*

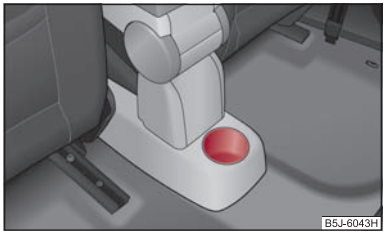


Fig. 72 Centre console: Cup holder

You can place one cup or beverage can into the recess ⇒ fig. 72.

WARNING

- **Do not place any hot beverages into the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!**
- **Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). You might be injured by them in the event of an accident.**

Caution

Do not open the beverages in the cup holder while driving. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking and therefore the electrical components or the seat upholstery can be damaged. ■

Parking ticket holder

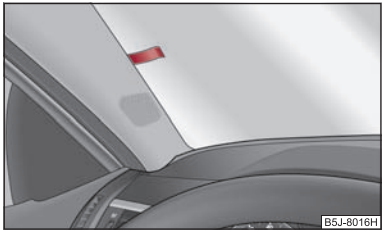


Fig. 73 Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching a car park ticket in parking areas.

The parking ticket has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision. ■

Ashtray*

Fig. 74 Centre console: Ashtray at the front / rear

Removing ashtray

– Remove the ashtray ⇒ fig. 74 upwards. When removing do not hold the ashtray at the cover - risk of breakage.

Replacing ashtray

– Insert the ashtray vertically.

⚠ WARNING

Never lay flammable objects in the ashtray basin - risk of fire! ■

Cigarette lighter* and power sockets*

Cigarette lighter

You can also use the socket on the cigarette lighter for other electrical appliances.

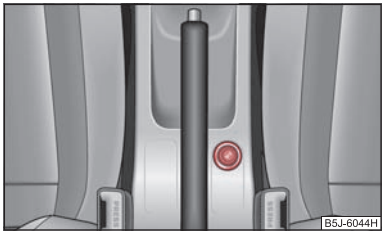


Fig. 75 Centre console: Cigarette lighter

Using the cigarette lighter

– Press in the button of the cigarette lighter ⇒ fig. 75.
– Wait until the button jumps forward.
– Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use it.
– Insert the cigarette lighter again into the socket.

Using the socket

– Remove the cigarette lighter or the cover of the power socket.
– Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12 volt power socket can also be used to supply power to additional electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 120 watts. ▶

WARNING

- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Not paying proper attention or incorrect use the cigarette lighter in an uncontrolled manner may result in burns.**
- **The cigarette lighter and the power socket also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. This is why you should never leave children unattended in the vehicle!**

Caution

Always use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.

Note

- **Connecting electrical components when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle – risk of battery draining!**
- Further information ⇒ page 179. ■

Power socket in the luggage compartment*

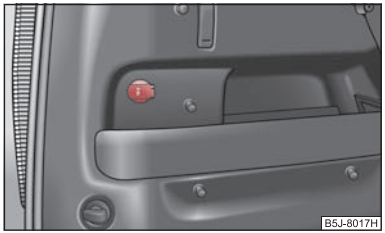


Fig. 76 Luggage compartment: Power socket

– Open the cover of the power socket ⇒ fig. 76.

– Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

You can only use the power socket for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 120 watts. The vehicle battery will be discharged in the process if the engine is stationary.

The same remarks apply here as for ⇒ page 72, “Cigarette lighter”.

Further information ⇒ page 179, “Accessories, changes and replacement of parts”. ■

Storage compartments

Overview

You will find the following storage facilities in your vehicle:

Storage compartments on the front passenger side*	⇒ page 74
Storage compartment on the driver's side	⇒ page 74
Storage compartment for spectacles*	⇒ page 75
Stowage compartment in centre console	⇒ page 75
Storage compartment in the front seat*	⇒ page 75
Front seat armrest with storage compartment*	⇒ page 75
Storage compartment in the front doors	⇒ page 76
Storage compartments in the luggage compartment	⇒ page 76
Flexible storage compartment*	⇒ page 76
Clothes hooks*	⇒ page 77

WARNING

- **Please do not place anything on top of the dash panel. Such objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic situation – risk of accident!**
- **Ensure that when driving no objects from the centre console of from other storage possibilities may get into the footwell of the driver. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident!** ■

Storage compartments on the front passenger side*

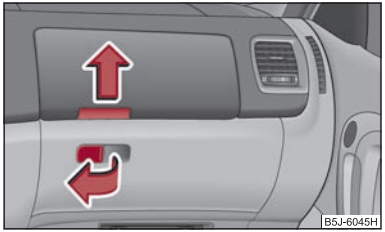


Fig. 77 Dash panel: Storage compartments on the front passenger side

On some vehicles, the storage compartments are not equipped with lids.

Opening and closing the storage compartments on the front passenger side

- Pull the handle of the lid in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 77 and fold it open.
- Swivel the flap until it is heard to lock.

A pin holder is located on the inside of the flap.

⚠ WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons. ■

Cooling of storage compartment on front passenger side*

The storage compartment can be fitted for vehicles with an air-conditioning system with a closable inlet for cooled air.

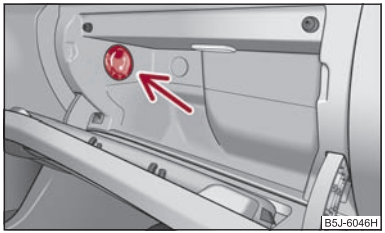


Fig. 78 Storage compartment: Using cooling system

- You can switch the cooling system on or off using the control dial ⇒ fig. 78.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend that you switch off the cooling if it is operating in the heating mode or if you are not using the cooling system for the storage compartment. ■

Storage compartment on the driver's side

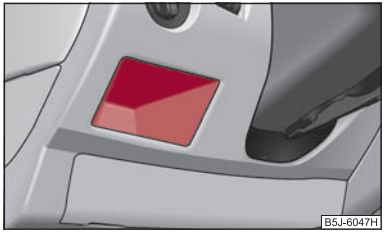


Fig. 79 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the driver's side

Unlockable compartment below the steering wheel on the left. ■

Storage compartment for spectacles*

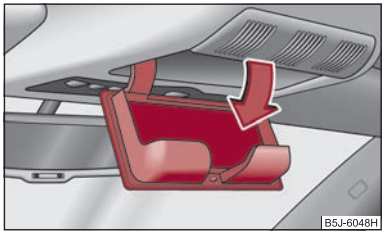


Fig. 80 Detail of the headliner: Storage compartment for spectacles

– Press on the lid of the stowage compartment, the stowage compartment opens downwards ⇒ fig. 80.

⚠ WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed. ■

Stowage compartment in centre console

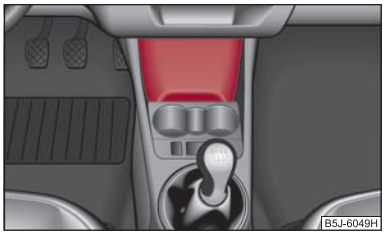


Fig. 81 Centre console: Storage compartment

The storage compartment without cover in the centre console is foreseen for storage of small objects. ■

Storage compartment in the front seat*

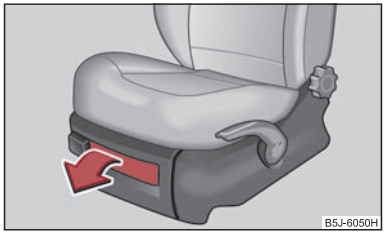


Fig. 82 Front seat: Storage compartment

The storage compartment is foreseen for storing small objects of up to 1 kg. in weight.

– Tilt the lock to open the flap and pull out the flap ⇒ fig. 82.

– Tilt the lock to close the flap and press flap close. ■

Front seat armrest with storage compartment*

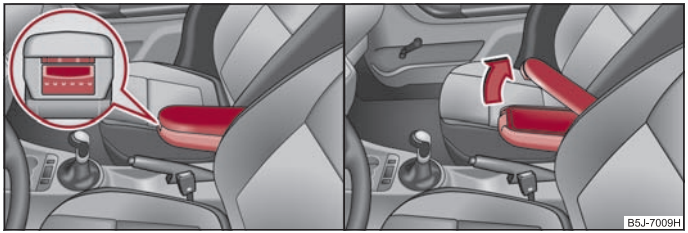


Fig. 83 Armrest: Storage compartment / open storage compartment

Fold the armrest

– Press the bottom button on the face end of the armrest ⇒ fig. 83 on the left. Fold the armrest forwards and release the button.

Opening storage compartment

– Press the top button and fold up the cover of the storage compartment ⇒ page 75, fig. 83 on the right.

Note

The moving space of the arms can be restricted if the armrest is folded down. In city traffic the armrest should not be folded down. ■

Storage compartment in the front doors

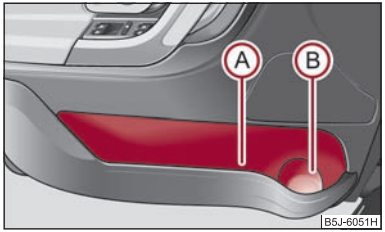


Fig. 84 Stowage compartment in door panel

A bottle holder is located in the area (B) of the storage compartment for the front doors.

WARNING

Use the area (A) ⇒ fig. 84 of the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired. ■

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

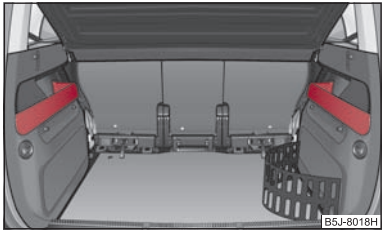


Fig. 85 Storage compartments in the side trim panel

Storage compartments are located on both sides of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 85.

The storage compartments are intended for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg in weight. ■

Flexible storage compartment*

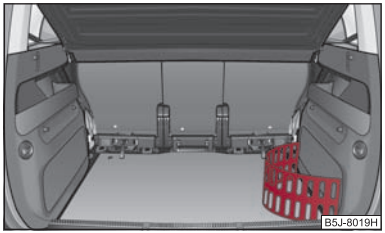


Fig. 86 Flexible storage compartment

A flexible storage compartment is located on the right side of the luggage compartment. The flexible storage compartment is foreseen for storing small objects of up to 8 kg. in weight.

Removing

– Take hold of the flexible storage compartment at both upper corners. ▶

- Press the upper corners to the inside and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
- Take it out by pulling towards the middle of the vehicle.

Installing

- Insert both ends of the flexible storage compartment into the openings of the right side trim panel of the luggage compartment and push it downwards until it locks. ■

Clothes hooks*

The clothes hooks are located on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- **Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.**
- **Use the hooks for hanging only light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**
- **The maximum permissable load of the hooks is 2 kg.**
- **Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this will interfere with the protection offered by the head airbag*.** ■

Heating and air conditioning system

Air outlet vents

The information provided is valid for all vehicles.

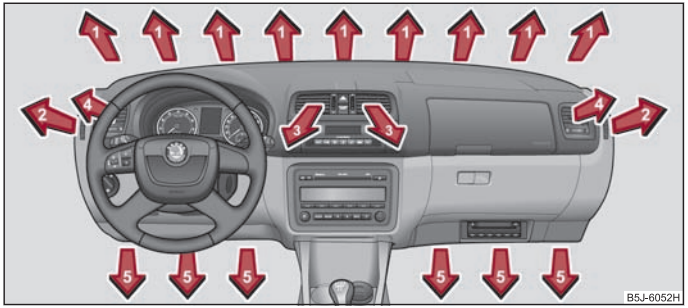


Fig. 87 Air outlet vents

Open the air outlet vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical thumbwheel (air outlet vents 3) or the horizontal wheel (air outlet vents 4) to the position .

Close air outlet vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical thumbwheel (air outlet vents 3) or the horizontal wheel (air outlet vents 4) to the position **0**.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 3 and 4

– In order to change the strength of the air flow, swivel the horizontal lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster.

– In order to change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster.

You can set the air supply to the individual vents with the air distribution control (C) ⇒ page 79, fig. 88. Air outlet vents **3** and **4** can also be opened or closed individually.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system* and the atmospheric conditions. ■

Recirculated air mode

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching recirculated air mode on

– Press the button (D) ⇒ page 81, fig. 89, the warning light lights up in the button.

Switching recirculated air mode off

– Press again the button - the warning light in the button goes out.

The recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control (C) is in position ⇒ page 81, fig. 89. You can also switch recirculated air mode on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing button .

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up. ■

Heating

Using the system

The heating system delivers air into the interior of the vehicle and warms it as required.

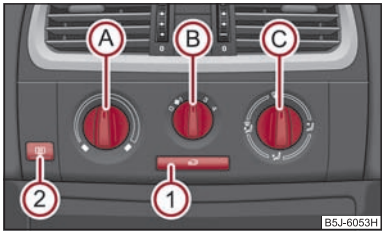


Fig. 88 Heating: Control elements

Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial (A) ⇒ fig. 88 to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial (A) to the left in order to increase the temperature.

Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch (B) into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch (B) into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.
- If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button (1) - recirculated air mode ⇒ page 78.

Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow using the air distribution control (C) ⇒ page 78.

Rear window heater

- Press button (2). Further information ⇒ page 52, “Rear window heater”.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and ventilation systems operate properly.

All controls apart from the control dial (B) can be set to any desired intermediate position.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The blower should aways be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Note

- If the air distribution is positioned towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment. ■

Set heating

Recommended settings of heating controls for:

Setup	Setting of the control dial			Button ①	Air outlet vents 3	Air outlet vents 4
	Ⓐ	Ⓑ	Ⓒ			
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Do not switch on	Closing	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Closing	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		briefly switched on	Opening	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Do not switch on	Closing	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Opening	Opening

Note

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** ⇒ page 78, fig. 87 in the opened position. ■

Climatic (semi-automatic air conditioning system)*

Description

Climatic is a combined cooling and heating system with electronic control of the convenience temperature in the vehicle interior. It makes it possible to optimally control the air temperature at any season of the year.

Description of the Climatic

It is important for your safety and for your driving comfort that the Climatic is operating properly.

The air conditioning system operates when switch AC ⇒ page 81, fig. 89 E is pressed and the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above +2°C and
- blower switch switched on (positions 1 to 4).

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect ⇒ ⚠.

Air at a temperature of about 5°C may flow out of the vents under certain circumstances when the cooling system is operating. Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (in particular at the leg area) and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

⚠ WARNING

- **For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.**
- **You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.**

Note

- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the Climatic is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor). ■

Using the system

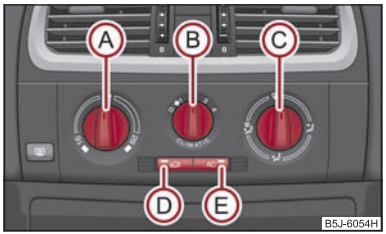


Fig. 89 Climatic: Control elements

Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial (A) ⇒ fig. 89 to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial (A) to the left in order to increase the temperature.

Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch (B) into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch (B) into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.
- If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button [⟲] (D) - recirculated air mode ⇒ page 78.

Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow using the air distribution control (C) ⇒ page 78.

switching cooling on and off

- Press the button [AC] (E) ⇒ fig. 89. The warning light lights up in the button.
- When you again press the switch [AC], the cooling system is switched off. The warning light in the button goes out.

The set temperature will be automatically maintained other than when the control dial is on the extreme right or extreme left position:

Extreme right position - full heating.

Extreme left position - full cooling.

The controls (A) and (C) can be set to any desired intermediate position.

The blower should aways be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to unfrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the air conditioning system on at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also during the cold season of the year - in order to remove such odours. Also open a window for a short time.
- Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode ⇒ page 78.
- Have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist workshop. ■

Set Climatic

Recommended settings of Climatic controls for the respective operating modes:

Setup	Setting of the control dial			Button		Air outlet vents 4
	Ⓐ	Ⓑ	Ⓒ	Ⓓ	Ⓔ	
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	recommended 22°C	3		Do not switch on	Switched off	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2	/	Do not switch on	switched on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	recommended 22°C	3		briefly switched on	Switched off	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening
the fastest cooling	recommended 22°C	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		briefly switched on	switched on	Opening
optimal cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Do not switch on	switched on	open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening

Note

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** ⇒ page 78, fig. 87 in the opened position. ■

Using the air conditioning system economically

The compressor on the Climatic uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

The desired interior temperature can also be achieved without switching in the cooling system just by switching to fresh air mode.

For the sake of the environment

When you economize on fuel, you also reduce pollutant emissions. ■

Operational malfunctions

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be:

- The fuse of the Climatic is defective. Check the fuse, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 191.
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot ⇒ page 16.

If you are not able to rectify the operational problem yourself, or if the cooling capacity decreases, switch the cooling system off. Contact a specialist garage. ■

Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)

Description

The Climatronic system is a combination of an automatic heating, fresh air and cooling system which provides optimal comfort for the occupants of the car.

The Climatronic maintains a constant temperature fully automatically, once it has been set. This is achieved by automatically varying the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stages and the air distribution. The system also takes into account sunlight which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually. The **automatic mode** ⇒ page 86 ensures maximum wellbeing of the occupants at all times of the year.

Description of Climatronic system

The cooling operates only if the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above approx. +2°C,
- AC switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect ⇒ ⚠.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly.

The AC compressor is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak! ▶

Recommended setting for all periods of the year:

- Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22°C (72°F).
- Press the button AUTO ⇒ fig. 90.
- Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4**, so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards ⇒ page 78, fig. 87.

Switching over between degrees Celsius and degrees Fahrenheit

Press and hold the buttons AUTO and AC ⇒ fig. 90 at the same time. The information in the desired temperature measuring unit appears in the display.

WARNING

- **For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.**
- **You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.**

Note

- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the cooling system on at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also during the cold season of the year - in order to remove such odours. Also open a window for a short time.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- Using the cooling economically ⇒ page 84.
- Operational problems ⇒ page 84. ■

Overview of the control elements

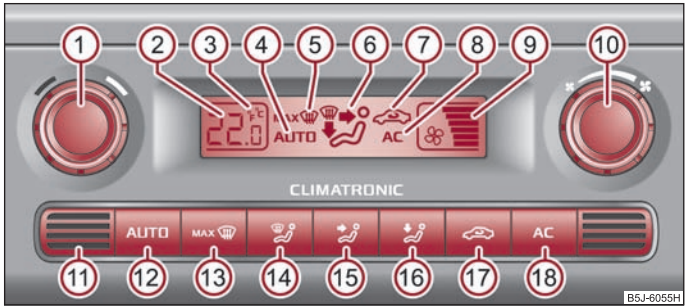


Fig. 90 Climatronic: Control elements

Buttons / control dial

(1) Setting the interior temperature

The displays

(2) Selected interior temperature, e.g. +22°C (72°F)
(3) Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit
(4) Automatic air conditioning mode
(5) De-mist or de-ice the windscreen
(6) Air flow to the windscreen, head, upper body and feet
(7) Recirculated air mode
(8) Air conditioning system switched on
(9) Set blower speed

Buttons / control dial

(10) Setting the blower speed
(11) Interior temperature sensor
(12) Automatic mode

(13) De-mist or de-ice the windscreen
(14) Air flow to the windows
(15) Air flow to head
(16) Air flow in the footwell
(17) Recirculated air mode
(18) Air conditioning system switched on

Note

The interior temperature sensor (11) is located in the bottom part of the device. Do not glue or cover over the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic. ■

Automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Switching automatic mode on

– Set a temperature between +18°C (64 °F) and +29°C (86 °F).

– Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4** ⇒ page 78, fig. 87, so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

– Press the button AUTO, **AUTO** appears in the display.

The automatic mode is switched off by pressing the button for the air distribution or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated. ■

Defrosting windscreen

Defrosting windscreen – switching on

– Press the button MAX ⇒ page 85, fig. 90.

Defrosting windscreen – switching off

– Once again press the button MAX or the button AUTO.

The temperature control is controlled automatically. More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** and **2**. ■

Setting temperature

– You can set the desired interior temperature after switching on the ignition with the control dial (1).

You can set the interior temperature between +18°C (64°F) and +29°C (86 °F). The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range. If you select the temperature below +18°C (64°F), "LO" appears in the display. If you select the temperature higher than +29°C (86°F), "HI" appears in the display. In both limit positions the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity, respectively. The temperature is not controlled in this case.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (in particular at the leg area) and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons. ■

Controlling blower

There are a total of seven blower stages available.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. You can also, however, adapt the blower stages manually to suit your particular needs.

– Turn the control dial (10) ⇒ page 85, fig. 90 to the left (reduce blower speed) or right (increase blower speed).

If you switch off the blower, the Climatronic is switched off.

WARNING

- **"Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.**
- **Do not switch the Climatronic system off for longer than necessary.**
- **Switch the Climatronic system on as soon as the windows mist up.** ■

Starting-off and Driving

Setting steering wheel position

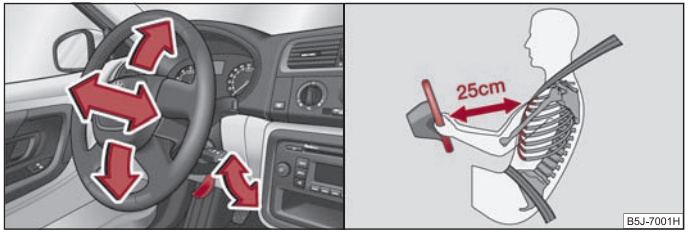


Fig. 91 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below the steering column / Safe distance to steering wheel

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

- Adjust the driver seat ⇒ page 57.
- Pull the lever below the steering column ⇒ fig. 91 down ⇒ ⚠.
- Set the steering wheel to the desired position (concerning height and forward/back position).
- Then push the lever up against the steering column until it locks into place.

⚠ WARNING

- **You must not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving!**
- **The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 91 on the right. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving – risk of accident!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you adjust the steering wheel further towards the head, you will reduce the protection offered by the driver airbag in the event of an accident. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.**
- **When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed.** ■

Ignition lock

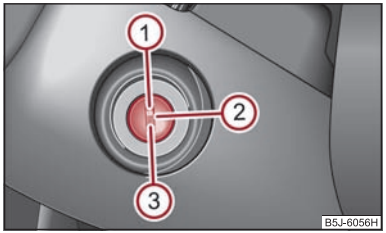


Fig. 92 Ignition lock positions

Petrol engines

(1) - ignition switched off, engine off

(2) - ignition switched on

(3) - start engine

Diesel engines

(1) - interruption of fuel supply, ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked.

(2) - heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on ▶

- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

(3) - start engine

Applies to all models:

Position (1)

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin is heard to engage. You should always lock the steering as a general rule if you leave your vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against possible theft of your vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Position (2)

Move the steering wheel back and forward a little if the ignition key cannot, or cannot easily be turned into this position, in order to release the steering lock.

Position (3)

The engine is started in this position. At the same time switched on low beam or main beam or other electrical components with major power consumption are briefly switched off. The ignition key moves back into position (2) when one releases the key.

The ignition key must be turned back into position (1) each time before starting the engine again. The starter repeat lock in the ignition lock prevents the starter being engaged when the engine is running and thus getting damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position (2) (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel - risk of accident!**
- **Do not withdraw the ignition key from the lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock can engage immediately - risk of accident!**
- **Always withdraw the ignition key if you are going to leave the vehicle, even for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) - risk of injury!** ■

Starting the engine

General

You can only start the engine only using an original ignition key.

- Place the gearshift lever into neutral and put on the handbrake firmly before starting the engine.
- The clutch pedal should be fully depressed when starting the engine - the starter then only has to crank the engine.
- Let go of the key as soon as the engine starts otherwise there may be damage to the starter.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine until oil pressure can be built up in the hydraulic valve clearance compensation. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

If the engine does not start ...

You can use the battery of another vehicle as a jump-start aid ⇒ page 186.

It is only possible to tow-start vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox. The tow-starting distance must not be more than 50 metres ⇒ page 189.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never run the engine in non ventilated or enclosed areas. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odorless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas - hazard! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running.**

(!) Caution

- The starter may only be operated (ignition key position (3)), if the engine is not running. If the starter is immediately operated after switching off the engine, the starter or the engine can be damaged.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads as long as the engine has not yet reached its normal operating temperature - risk of damaging the engine!

▶

- Vehicles which are fitted with an exhaust gas catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres.

For the sake of the environment

Never warm up the engine when the vehicle is standing. Drive off right away. When driving the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower. ■

Petrol engines

These engines are fitted with a starter system which selects the correct fuel-air mixture for every external air temperature.

- Do not operate accelerator before and when starting engine.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right awayand wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the electrical fuel pump is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 191.
- If the engine does not start, contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

It may be necessary, if the engine is **very hot**, to slightly depress the accelerator after the engine has started. ■

Diesel engines

Glow plug system

Diesel engines are equipped with a glow plug system, the preglow period being controlled automatically in line with the coolant temperature and outside temperature.

The preglow indicator light ➰ comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

- You should start the engine immediately after the glow plug warning light ➰ has gone out.
- The glow plug warning light will come on for about one second if the engine is at a normal operating temperature or if the outside temperature is above +5°C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right awayand wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the diesel preglow system is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 191.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

Starting the engine after fuel tank has run dry

It may take longer than normal to start the engine after refuelling if the fuel tank has run completely dry - up to one minute. This is because the fuel system must first of all be filled while the attempting to start the engine. ■

Switching off the engine

– The engine can be switched off by turning the ignition key from position (1) into ⇒ page 87, fig. 92.

WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!**
- **The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries.**

Caution

you should not switch the engine off right away at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated for a lengthy period at high loads but should be allowed it to run at idling speed for about 2 minutes. This prevents any accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

- The radiator fan may continue running for a further 10 minutes or so after the engine and the ignition have been switched off. The coolant fan may, however, also ▶

switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises because of an accumulation of heat in the engine or if the engine is warm and the engine compartment is additionally heated by strong sunlight.

- This is why particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment". ■

Shifting (manual gearbox)

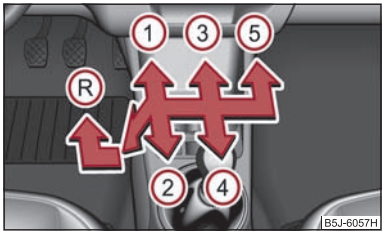


Fig. 93 Shift pattern on models fitted with 5-speed manual gearbox

Shift into reverse only when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before engaging reverse gear in order to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage the reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

Note

- One should not lay the hand on the shift lever while driving the vehicle. The pressure of the hand will be transferred to the gearshift forks in the gearbox. This can, over a period of time, lead to early wear of the gearshift forks.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears, in order to avoid unnecessary wear and damage. ■

Handbrake

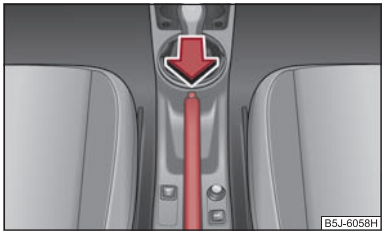


Fig. 94 Centre console: Handbrake

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up fully.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** press in the locking button ⇒ fig. 94.

– Hold the button pressed and push the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ ⚠.

The handbrake warning light ⓘ lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds and the following text appears in the display* if you have inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied:

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if you drive at a speed of more than 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

- **Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating which will have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident! In addition this can result in premature wear of the rear brake pads.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off - risk of accident!**

Caution

After the car has come to a stop, always first of all apply the handbrake firmly before then additionally engaging a gear (manual gearbox) or moving the selector lever into position **P** (automatic gearbox). ■

Parking aid*

The parking aid provides a warning of obstacles behind the vehicle.

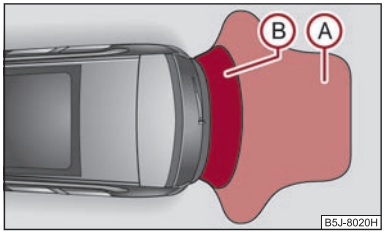


Fig. 95 Parking aid: Range of sensors

The audible parking aid determines the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle located behind the vehicle with the aid of ultrasound sensors. The sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

Range of sensors

The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 160 cm from the obstacle (area (A) ⇒ fig. 95). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm (area (B)) - danger area. **You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!** If the vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing device*, the boundary of the danger area starts, continuous tone, 5 cm further behind the vehicle. The vehicle can be extended through an installed detachable towing device.

Activating

The parking aid is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on. This is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement signal.

Deactivating

The parking aid is deactivated by disengaging the reverse gear or by switching the ignition off.

WARNING

- **The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when parking the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres.**
- **You should therefore satisfy yourself, before reversing, that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., behind your vehicle. Such an obstacle might not be within the range detected by the sensors.**
- **Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signal of the parking aid. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.**

Note

- The parking aid does not operate if you are towing a trailer (applies to models which feature a factory-fitted towing device*).
- A system fault is indicated if a warning signal sounds for about 5 seconds after switching the ignition on and engaging reverse gear and there is no obstacle close to your vehicle. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.
- If the audible warning sounds for 3 seconds after switching the ignition on and engaging the reverse gear, a fault has occured in the system. It is possible that the audible warning does not function correctly (an obstacle behind the vehicle may not be detected - take extra care). Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice to enable the parking aid to operate properly.

- If the parking aid is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position (P), warning signal indicates interruption (vehicle can no longer move). ■

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Introduction

The cruise control system (CCS) maintains a constant speed, more than 30 km/h (20 mph), once it has been set, without you having to depress the accelerator pedal. This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine. The cruise control system makes it possible - particularly on long journeys - for you to rest your "accelerator foot".

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) - risk of accident!**
- **In order to prevent unintentional use of the cruise control system, always switch off the system after use.**

Note

- Models fitted with a manual gearbox: Always depress the clutch pedal if you switch on the cruise control system when the gearbox is in Neutral! Otherwise the engine can rev up unintentionally.
- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving on steep downhill sections. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. One should shift down in good time to a lower gear or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**. ■

Storing a speed

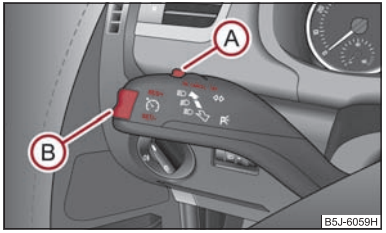


Fig. 96 Operating lever: Rocker button and switch of the cruise control system

The cruise control system is operated by means of the switch (A) and the rocker button (B) in the left lever of the multi-functional switch.

- Press the switch (A) ⇒ fig. 96 into the position **ON**.
- After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button (B) into the **SET-** position - the current speed is stored.

After you have released the rocker button (B) out of the position **SET-**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

You can **increase** the speed by depressing the accelerator. Releasing the accelerator will cause the speed to **drop** again to the set speed.

This does not apply, however, if you drive at a speed which is more than 10 km/h higher than the set speed for a period of longer than 5 minutes. The stored speed will be cancelled in the memory. You then have to re-store the desired speed.

One can **reduce** the speed in the usual manner. The system is switched off temporarily by actuating the brake or clutch pedal ⇒ page 93.

WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

Changing a stored speed

You can also change the speed of the vehicle without depressing the accelerator.

Faster

- You can **increase** the stored speed without depressing the accelerator, by pressing the rocker button (B) ⇒ page 92, fig. 96 into the **RES+** position.
- The speed of the car will increase continuously if you hold the rocker button pressed in the **RES+** position. Once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Slower

- You can **decrease** the stored speed by pressing the rocker button (B) in the **SET–** position.
- Holding down the pushbutton pressed in the **SET–** position will cause the speed of the vehicle to reduce continuously. Once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
- If you release the rocker button when the vehicle is travelling at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the speed is not stored, the memory is erased. It is then necessary to again store the speed with the rocker button (B) in the position **SET–** after an increase in speed of the vehicle to more than 30 km/hour. ■

Switching off the cruise control system temporarily

- You can **switch off** the cruise control system **temporarily** by depressing the brake pedal or clutch pedal, on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox only with the brake pedal.
- You can switch off temporarily the cruise control system, if you press the switch (A) in the middle position.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

The **Resumption** of the stored speed is achieved by releasing the brake or clutch pedal, on vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox only after releasing the brake pedal and after shortly pressing the rocker button (B) ⇒ page 92, fig. 96 into the position **RES+**.

⚠ WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

Switching off the cruise control system completely

- Press the switch (A) ⇒ page 92, fig. 96 to the right into position **OFF**. ■

Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox*

Information for driving with the 6-speed automatic gearbox*

Your car is equipped with a conventional 6-speed automatic gearbox.

The maximum speed is reached in the 5th gear. The 6th gear serves as an economic driving programme, which is intended to reduce the fuel consumption. Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically. You can also, however, switch the gearbox over into the **Tiptronic mode**. This mode makes it possible for you to also shift gears manually ⇒ page 98.

Starting-off and Driving

- Depress the brake pedal fully and keep it depressed.
- Press the Shiftlock button (button in handle of the selector lever), move the selector lever into the desired position, e.g. **D** ⇒ page 95, and then release the Shiftlock button.
- Wait a moment until the gearbox has shifted (a slight engagement nudge can be felt).
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator ⇒ ⚠.

Stop

- The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping just for a short time, such as at a cross roads. It is sufficient to hold the vehicle stationary using the foot brake. The engine can, however, be allowed just to idle.

Parking

- Depress the brake pedal and hold it depressed.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Press and Shiftlock button in the selector lever, move the selector lever to **P** and then release the Shiftlock button.

The engine can only be **started** when the selector lever is in position **P** or **N** ⇒ page 88.

It is sufficient to engage selector lever position **P** when parking on a flat surface. When parking on a slope you should first apply the handbrake firmly and then move the selector lever into position **P**. This is to ensure that there is no excessive pressure acting on the lock mechanism and that it is easier to subsequently move the selector lever out of position **P**.

If the selector lever position **N** is selected by accident while driving it is first necessary to release pressure on the accelerator pedal and wait for idling speed of the engine to be reached before engaging a drive position in the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not depress the accelerator when changing the position of the selector lever if the car is stationary and the engine is running - risk of accident!**
- **Never move the selector lever into position R or P when driving - risk of an accident!**
- **When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary, it is necessary to hold the car with the brake pedal in all the positions of the selector lever (except P and N) since the power transmission is never completely interrupted, also not when the engine is idling - the vehicle creeps.** ■

Information for driving with the automatic gearbox DSG*

The abbreviation DSG means Direct shift gearbox (Direct shift gearbox).

Two independent clutches are needed for the power transmission between the engine and the gearbox. These replace the torque converter of the conventional automatic gearbox. Their shifting is matched in such a way that there are no jerks when shifting the gear and the power transmission of the engine to the front wheels is not interrupted. Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically. You can also, however, switch the gearbox over into the **Tiptronic mode**. This mode makes it possible for you to also shift gears manually ⇒ page 98.

Starting-off and Driving

- Depress the brake pedal fully and keep it depressed. ▶

- Press the Shiftlock button (button in handle of the selector lever), move the selector lever into the desired position, e.g. in **D**, and then release the Shiftlock button.
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator ⇒ ⚠.

Stop

- The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping just for a short time, such as at a cross roads. It is absolutely sufficient to hold the stopped vehicle stationary by depressing the foot brake. The engine can, however, be allowed just to idle.

Parking

- Depress the brake pedal and hold it depressed.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Press and Shiftlock button in the selector lever, move the selector lever to **P** and then release the Shiftlock button.

The engine can only be **started** when the selector lever is in position **P** or **N** ⇒ page 88. At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.

It is sufficient to engage selector lever position **P** when parking on a flat surface. When parking on a slope you should first apply the handbrake firmly and then move the selector lever into position **P**. This is to ensure that there is no excessive pressure acting on the lock mechanism and that it is easier to subsequently move the selector lever out of position **P**.

If the selector lever position **N** is selected by accident while driving it is first necessary to release pressure on the accelerator pedal and wait for idling speed of the engine to be reached before engaging a drive position in the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not depress the accelerator when changing the position of the selector lever if the car is stationary and the engine is running – risk of accident!**
- **Never move the selector lever into position R or P when driving – risk of an accident!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you are stopping at a hill (downhill section), never try to hold the car stationary with the gear engaged by means of the "accelerator", this means by letting the clutch slip. This can lead to overheating of the clutch. If there is a risk of overheating of the clutch due to overload, the clutch is opened automatically and the vehicle rolls backward – risk of accident!**
- **If you must stop at a slope, depress and hold the brake pedal, so that you can prevent the vehicle from rolling back.**

Caution

- The double clutch on the automatic gearbox DSG is equipped with an overload protection. If you make use of the uphill function on a vehicle which is stationary or driving slowly uphill, it will result in an increase of thermal stress of the clutches.
- In the event that they overheat, the warning light and a warning text ⇒ page 23 appear in the information display*. In such a case bring the vehicle to a stop, switch off the engine and wait until the warning light and the warning go out - risk of gearbox damage! You can continue the trip as soon as the warning light and the warning go out. ■

Selector lever positions

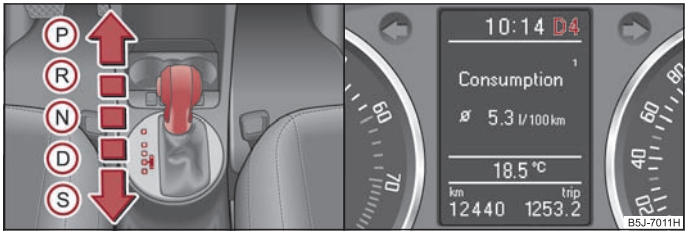


Fig. 97 Selector lever / information display: Selector lever positions

The selector lever position you have engaged is shown in the information display of the instrument cluster with the corresponding gear symbol highlighted ⇒ fig. 97 on ▶

the right. In the positions **D** and **S** the gear you have already engaged will be additionally displayed on the display.

(P) – Parklock

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this position.

The Parklock must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary ⇒ ⚠.

If you wish to move the selector lever into or out of this position, you must press the Shiftlock button in the handle of the selector lever and at the same time depress the brake pedal.

(R) – Reverse gear

Reverse gear must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine idling ⇒ ⚠.

The brake pedal must be depressed and at the same time the Shiftlock must be pressed, if you wish to obtain the selector lever positions **R**, **P** or **N**.

When the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is in position **R**, the reverse lights will come on.

(N) – Neutral

The transmission is in Neutral in this position.

The brake pedal must be depressed (if the lever is in its position for longer than 2 seconds) in order to move the selector lever out of the position **N** into the position **D**, with the ignition switched on, on a vehicle travelling at less than 5 km/hour or on a stationary vehicle.

(D) – Position for driving forward

When the selector lever is in this position, the forward gears are shifted up and down automatically in line with engine load, vehicle speed and the dynamic shift programme.

You must depress the brake pedal if you wish to move into position **D** from **N** when the vehicle is travelling at less than 5 km/hour or is stationary ⇒ ⚠.

In certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in mountainous regions or when towing a trailer) it may be beneficial to select the manual shift programme ⇒ page 98 for a short time in order to adapt the gearbox ratios manually to the driving situations.

(S) – Position for sporty style of driving

Shifting up later into a higher gear makes it possible to fully exploit the power potential of the engine. The gearbox also then shifts down at higher engine speeds as in the position **D**.

The gearbox does not shift into the 6th gear in the position **S**, because the maximum speed is reached with the 5th gear [9].

The Shiftlock on the selector lever grip must be pressed when moving the selector lever out of the position **D** into the position **S**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never move the selector lever into position R or P when driving – risk of an accident!**
- **When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary, it is necessary to hold the car with the brake pedal in all the positions of the selector lever (except P and N) since the power transmission is never completely interrupted, also not when the engine is idling – the vehicle creeps.**
- **You must on no account unintentionally operate the throttle (e.g. by hand from the engine compartment) if a drive position is engaged when the car is stationary. The vehicle would otherwise immediately start off – also when the handbrake is firmly applied – risk of an accident!**
- **You must move the selector lever into position P and firmly apply the handbrake first before you or any other person opens the bonnet and starts working on the engine when it is running – risk of accident! It is also essential to observe all warnings ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment".** ■

Selector lever lock

Automatic selector lever lock

With the ignition on, the selector lever is locked when it is in the positions **P** and **N**. You must first of all depress the brake pedal in order to move the selector lever out of this position. The warning light ⇒ page 30 lights up in the instrument cluster as a reminder for the driver when the selector lever is in position **P** or **N**. ▶

[9] Not valid for vehicles with automatic gearbox DSG.

A time delay element ensures that the selector lever is not blocked when rapidly switching over the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This does, for example, allow one to seesaw out a stuck vehicle. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the **N** position for more than 2 seconds without the brake pedal being pressed.

The selector lever lock is only active if the vehicle is stationary or moving at speed of less than 5 km/hour. The lock is switched off automatically into position **N** when the car is travelling at a higher speed.

Shiftlock button

The Shiftlock button in the handle of selector lever prevents certain selector lever positions being engaged inadvertently. The selector lever lock is cancelled when you press the Shiftlock button.

Keylock – Ignition key withdrawal lock

You can only withdraw the ignition key after switching off the ignition if the selector lever is in position **P**. If the ignition key is withdrawn, the selector lever is blocked in position **P**. ■

Kickdown function

The kickdown function provides you with maximum acceleration power.

Fully depressing the accelerator pedal allows the kickdown function to be activated in the desired driving program. This function has precedence over the driving programme and serves for maximum acceleration of the vehicle when exploiting the maximum power potential of the engine without taking into account the current selector lever position (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**). The gearbox shifts down to one or several gears in line with the driving state and the vehicle accelerates. The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

⚠ WARNING

Please note that using the kickdown function can result in the driven wheels spinning on a smooth or slippery road surface – risk of skidding! ■

Dynamic shift programme

The automatic gearbox of your vehicle is controlled electronically. Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically on the basis of pre-defined driving programmes.

Adopting a **moderate style of driving** will cause the gearbox to select the most economical driving programme. Shifting up into a higher gear as soon as possible and shifting down as late as possible will have a favourable effect on your fuel consumption.

Adopting a **sporty style of driving** with rapid movements of the accelerator pedal combined with sharp acceleration and frequent changes in speed, exploiting the top speed of the car or depressing the accelerator pedal (kickdown function), will cause the gearbox to switch over to this style of driving and shift down earlier with frequent changes in gears in comparison to the moderate style of driving.

Selecting the most appropriate driving programme for the particular style of driving is a continuous process. Irrespective of this it is, however, possible to switch or shift down into a dynamic shift programme by depressing the accelerator rapidly. The gearbox shifts down into a lower gear matching the speed of the car and this allows you to accelerate rapidly (e.g. when overtaking) without having to depress the accelerator pedal fully into the kickdown range. The original programme will be reactivated to match your particular style of driving once the gearbox has shifted up again.

When driving in hilly regions, the gears are selected to match uphill and downhill sections. This avoids the gearbox frequently shifting up and down when negotiating an uphill stretch. When driving downhill, it is possible to shift down into the Tiptronic position, in order to exploit the engine brake torque. ■

Tiptronic

The Tiptronic allows the driver to also shift gears manually.

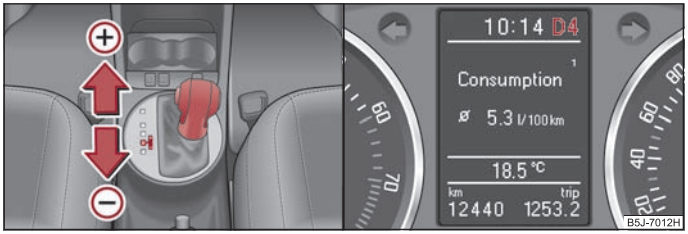


Fig. 98 Manual shifting: Selector lever / large information display

The selector lever position you have engaged is indicated in the information display of the instrument cluster together with the engaged gear ⇒ fig. 98 on the right.

Switching over to manual shifting

– Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D**. After switching over, the current engaged gear is indicated in the display.

Shifting up gears

– One-touch forward of the selector lever (in the Tiptronic position) ⇒ fig. 98 ⊕.

Shifting down gears

– One-touch back of the selector lever (in the Tiptronic position) ⊖.

It is possible to switch over to manual both when the car is stationary and also when driving.

When you accelerate, the gearbox shifts up automatically into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If you select a lower gear, the automatic gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

If you operate the kickdown function, the gearbox shifts into a lower gear in line with the vehicle speed and engine speed. ■

Emergency programme

An emergency programme exists in the event of a fault in the system.

The gearbox operates in a corresponding emergency programme if there are functional faults in the gearbox electronics. This is indicated by all of the segments in the display lighting up or going out.

A functional fault can have the following effect:

- The gearbox only shifts into certain gears.
- The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- The manual shift programme (Tiptronic) is switched off in the emergency mode.

If the gearbox has switched over to emergency mode, drive to the nearest specialist garage in order to have the fault rectified. ■

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

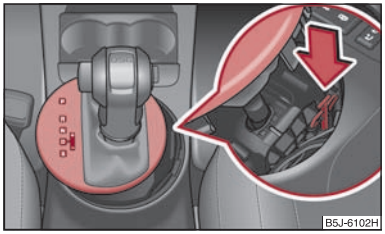


Fig. 99 Selector lever-emergency unlocking

In case of interruption of the power supply (e.g. flat vehicle battery, defective fuse) or defect of the selector lever lock, the selector lever can no longer be shifted from the position **P** in the normal way and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked in case of emergency.

– Apply the handbrake firmly.

– Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.

– Pull up rear cover.

– Use the finger to press the yellow plastic part downwards ⇒ fig. 99.

– Simultaneously press the shiftlock button in the handle of the selector lever in the position **N**[10].

Tow-starting and towing vehicle

Tow-starting a vehicle

It is not possible to tow-start vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox ⇒ page 188.

you can use jump-start cables connected to the battery of another vehicle for starting your car if the vehicle battery is flat ⇒ page 187.

Towing a vehicle

Please pay attention to the following information if it comes necessary to tow-in your car ⇒ page 188. ■

[10] If the selector lever is moved again into the position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Communication

Multifunction steering wheel*

Operate radio und navigation on the multifunction steering wheel

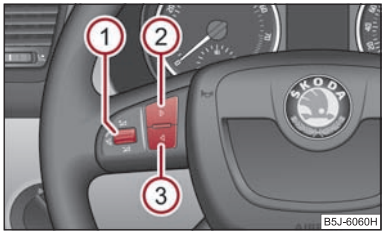


Fig. 100 Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons

The buttons for setting the basic functions of the factory-fitted radio and navigation system are located on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ fig. 100.

You can of course operate the radio and navigation at the appliance. You will find a description in the operating instructions of your radio.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are also illuminated except the symbols ✆ and 🔇.

By pressing or turning the buttons, you can carry out the following functions.

Button	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD / MP3	Navigation
1	press briefly[a)]	Switch off/on tone		
1	press for a long period of time[a)]	Swich the unit on / off		
1	+ turn upwards	Increase volume		
1	− turn downwards	Decrease volume		
2	▷ press briefly	Changing to the next stored radio station Changing to the next stored traffic information Interrupting the traffic report	Changing to the next title	
2	▷ press button for a long time	Interruption of the traffic report	fast forward	
3	◁ press briefly	Changing to the previously stored radio station Changing to the previously stored traffic information Interrupting the traffic report	Changing to the previous title	
3	◁ press button for a long time	Interruption of the traffic report	fast rewind	

[a] On vehicles which are equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II, pressing the button (1) only allows to operate the telephone.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio or navigation system.

Note

- The loudspeakers in the vehicle are matched to a power output of the radio and navigation system of 4x 20°W.
- For the equipment sound system*, the loudspeakers are matched to a power output of the amplifier of 4x40°W + 6x20 W. ■

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

The installation of a mobile phone and two-way radio system in a vehicle should be carried out by a specialist garage.

Mobile phones send and receive radio waves during a conversation as well as in standby mode. Radio waves can be harmful to the human body if their frequency exceeds certain limit values.

Škoda Auto permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

It is essential that you inform a specialist garage about the possibilites to assemble and operate mobile phones and two-way radio sets which have a power output of more than 10 W. They will inform you which technical possibilities exist for retrofitting mobile phones.

When using a mobille phone inside the vehicle, which is not inserted into the phone adapter, and thus has no connection to the external aerial, the electromagnetic radiation can exceed the current limit value. We therefore recommend to operate a mobile phone in the vehicle only when it is connected to an external aerial via the phone adapter. This improves the quality of the connection.

Operation of mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with functioning of the electronic systems of your vehicle. The reasons for this may be:

- no external aerial,
- external aerial incorrectly installed,
- transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- **If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in the vehicle without using a special external aerial or an external aerial which has been incorrectly installed, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field in the interior of the vehicle.**
- **Please concentrate fully at all times on your driving!**
- **You must not install two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts on the covers of the airbags or within the immediate deployment range of airbags. This might result in injuries to the occupants in the event of an accident.**
- **Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuver, an accident or a collision. In this case, the occupants of the vehicle might be injured.**

Note

Observe the country-specific regulations for the use of mobile phones in vehicles. ■

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II*

Introduction

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II is a built-in "handsfree-system", it provides a voice operated convenience mode via the multifunction steering wheel* or the navigation system*.

All communication between a telephone and the handsfree-system of your vehicle can only be established with the help of the Bluetooth® technology. The adapter* serves only for charging the telephone and for transmitting the signal to the external aerial of the vehicle. ▶

To ensure an optimum signal transmission, always leave the telephone with the adapter* in the telephone mount.

Furthermore the volume can be changed individually during the call at any time with the button for setting the radio* or navigation system* or with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel*.

WARNING

Pay attention primarily to the traffic situation! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety. Use the telephone system only to such an extent, so that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.

Note

- Please also refer to the additional instructions ⇒ page 101.
- Should you have any questions, please contact an authorised Škoda Service Partner. ■

Phone Phonebook

A phone phonebook is part of the mobile phone preinstallation with voice control. In the phone phonebook there are 2 500 free memory locations available. This phone phonebook can be used in line with the mobile telephone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the handsfree-system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

If a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, dialogue of the voice control) occurs during the updating procedure, the updating is interrupted. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

Note

It a yellow or red warning symbol lights up in the information display, the menu phonebook cannot be selected. ■

Connection of the mobile phone with the handsfree-system

In order to connect a mobile phone with the handsfree-system, it is necessary to connect the telephone to the handsfree-system. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions of your mobile phone. The following steps must be carried out for the connection:

- Activate the Bluetooth® in your telephone and the visibility of the mobile phone.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the menu **Phone - Phone search** in the information display and wait until the control unit has ended the search.
- Select your mobile phone in the menu of the units found.
- Confirm the PIN (as standard **1234**).
- If the hands-free system announces (as standard **Skoda UHV**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN (as standard **1234**) within 30 seconds and wait until the connection is established.[11)]
- After ending the connection, confirm in the information display that a new user profile was created.

If no more free space is available for creating a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes after switching on the ignition, switch the ignition off and then again on. The visibility of the hands-free system is established again for 3 minutes. The visibility of the Bluetooth® device is automatically switched off if the vehicle starts off or if the mobile phone connects to the device. ▶

[11)] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorization for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is performed via the input of a code. If the input for the authorization is necessary, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired to the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

Connection with an already paired mobile phone

After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[11]. Check on the mobile unit if the automatic connection was established.

Ending the connection

- By withdrawing the ignition key.
- By disconnecting the device in the information display.
- By disconnecting the device in the mobile phone.

Solving connection problems

If the system announces **No paired phone found**, check the operating state of the telephone:

- Is the telephone switched on?
- Is the PIN code entered?
- Is Bluetooth® active?
- Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
- Was the telephone already paired with the handsfree-system?

WARNING

In the event of air transport, the Bluetooth® function of the handsfree-system must be switched off by a specialist garage!

Note

- Not valid for all mobile phones which enable a communication via Bluetooth®. You can ask at an authorised Škoda Service Partner if your telephone is compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II.
- Please operate your mobile phone exclusively with a suitable adapter in order to keep a low radiation in the vehicle.
- Inserting the mobile phone into the adapter ensures an optimal sending and receiving power and offers at the same time the advantage of the battery charging.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the handsfree-system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is e.g. in a jacket pocket, this can lead to difficulties when establishing the Bluetooth® connection with the handsfree-system or the data transfer. ■

Inserting the mobile phone with the adapter*

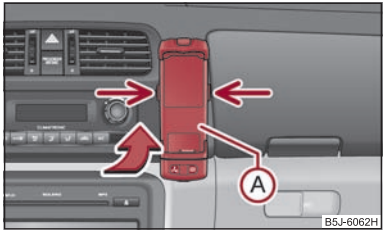


Fig. 101 Universal preparation for the phone

Only one telephone mount* is factory-fitted. An adapter for the telephone can be purchased from the range of the Škoda original accessories.

Inserting the mobile phone with the adapter

– First of all push the adapter (A) in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 101 up to the stop into the mount. Press the adapter slightly downwards, until it locks securely into position.

– Insert the mobile phone into the adapter (A) (as specified in manufacturer's instructions).

Removing the mobile phone with the adapter

– Press simultaneouly the side locks of the mount and remove the mobile phone and adapter ⇒ fig. 101. ▶

Caution

Taking the mobile phone out of the adapter during the call can lead to interruption of the connection. When taking out the mobile phone, the connection to the factory-fitted antenna is interrupted, this reduces the quality of the transmitting and receiving signal. The charging of the mobile phone battery is also interrupted. ■

Operating telephone calls with the aid of the adapter*.

Fig. 102 Illustration image: Single-button adapter / two-button adapter

The voice control of the telephone is activated by briefly pressing the PTT button (button push to talk) on the adapter* ⇒ fig. 102.

Aside from the PTT button, the SOS button can be found on certain adapters* on the right ⇒ fig. 102. After pressing the button for 2 seconds, the number 112 (Emergency call) is dialed.

Note

The adapters illustrated are only prime examples. ■

Operation of the telephone on the multifunction steering wheel*

Fig. 103 Multifunction steering wheel: Mobile phone operation

The driver can set the basic functions of the telephone by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel so that he can concentrate on the traffic situation without being distracted as little as possible by operating the telephone ⇒ fig. 103.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the telephone preinstallation at the factory.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are also illuminated except the symbols and .

Overview of the functions of the multifunction steering wheel with mobile phone operation:

Button	Action	Operation
1	press briefly	Accept call, end call, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of the dialed numbers, deactivate voice control
1	press button for a long time	Activate voice control (PTT button - Push to talk), reject call
1	+ turn upwards	Increase volume
1	− turn downwards	Decrease volume

The buttons operate the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone. ■

Operate the telephone via the information display*

The display of texts in the menu **Telephone** is possible in the following languages:

Czech, English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Russian, Portuguese.

In the menu **Telephone** you can select the following menu points:

- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**
- **Call register**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**
- **Settings**
- **Back**

Phone book

In the menu point **Phone book** is the list of the loaded contacts from the telephone memory and the SIM card of the mobile phone. In the phone phonebook there are 2 500 free memory locations available.

Dial number

In the menu point **Dial number**, you can write any telephone number. Select in sequence the desired digits with the aid of the handwheel and confirm it by pressing the handwheel. You can select the numbers **0 – 9**, the symbols **+, ✱, #** and the functions **Delete, Call, Cancel**.

Call register

In the menu point **Call register**, you can select the following menu points:

- **Missed calls**
- **Received calls**
- **Last calls**

Voice mailbox

In the menu **Voice mailbox**, it is possible to set the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number.

Bluetooth

In the menu **Bluetooth** you can select the following menu points:

- **User** - the overview of the stored users
- **New user** - Search for new telephones which are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switching on the visibility of the telephone unit for other devices
- **Media player**
  - **Active device**
  - **Paired devices**
  - **Search**
- **Phone name** - the possibility to change the name of the telephone unit (pre-set SKODA UHV)

Settings

In the menu **Settings** you can select the following menu points:

- **Phone book**
  - **Update**
  - **List**
    - **Surname**
    - **First name**
- **Ring tone**

Back

Return in the basic menu of the telephone. ■

Voice control

Dialogue

The period, in which the telephone system is ready to receive voice commands and carry out the voice commands, is called DIALOGUE. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

You can end the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button on the adapter* ⇒ page 104, fig. 102 or on the multifunction steering wheel* (press for a long period of time to start or briefly press to end) ⇒ page 104 or end it with the voice command **CANCEL**.

When receiving an incoming call, the dialogue is immediately interrupted and you can accept the call by pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel* or by pressing the button for receiving a call directly on your telephone.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**" and a new entry can be performed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd error the answer "**Cancel**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on the following factors:

- Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive voice pauses.
- Avoid insufficient articulation.
- Close the doors and windows in order to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
- It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the tone of your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
- During the dialogue avoid additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. simultaneously talking occupants.
- Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.
- The microphone for voice control is directed to the driver. Therefore, the device may respond less well to commands of the front passenger. ■

Voice commands

The voice control is possible in the following languages:

Czech, English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Russian, Portuguese and Dutch.

Voice commands for operating the telephone control unit

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	With this command you call up the contact from the phone book ⇒ page 107.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command a phone number can be entered which establishes a connection to the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system selects the last selected number.
MUSIC	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
OTHER OPTIONS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

After giving the command **DIAL NUMBER**, the system requests the entry of a telephone number. The telephone number can be entered as an interconnected spoken ▶

row of digits (complete number), in the form of order of digits (separation through a brief voice pause) or through individually spoken digits. After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 – 9**, symbols **+, ✱, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three). ■

Call name

– Press the PTT button.

– Give the command **CALL XZY** after the signal tone.

Example for calling the name from the phone book

Voice command	Announcement
CALL XYZ	**"Say home, work, mobile"**
e.g. **WORK**	**"XYZ work is dialed."**

■

Music playback via Bluetooth®

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from the devices such as MP3 player, mobile phone or notebook.

In order to enable the music playback via Bluetooth®, it is necessary to connect the device with the handsfree-system in the menu **Phone - Bluetooth - Media player**.

The operation of the music playback from the connected device can be performed via the handsfree-system with the voice control ⇒ page 106 or directly via the connected device.

Note

The device to be connected must support the Bluetooth® profile A2DP, see Owner's manual of the device to be connected. ■

Inputs AUX-IN* and MDI*

The input AUX-IN is located below the armrest* of the front seats and is marked with **AUX**.

The input MDI is located in the front below the front passenger storage compartment.

The inputs AUX-IN and MDI connect the external audio sources (e.g. iPod or MP3 player) and play back music from these devices via your radio* or navigation system* installed in the factory.

The description of the operation can be found in the relevant Owner's Manual of your radio* or your navigation*.

Note

- The loudspeakers in the vehicle are matched to a power output of the radio and navigation system of 4x 20°W.
- For the equipment sound system*, the loudspeakers are matched to a power output of the amplifier of 4x40°W + 6x20 W. ■

Safety

Passive Safety

Basic information

Driving the safe way

Passive safety measures reduce the risk of injury in accident situations.

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children. It is therefore important, in particular, to comply with the notes and warnings in this section for your own interest and in the interest of those travelling with you.

WARNING

- **This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants. You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.**
- **The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.** ■

Safety equipment

The safety equipment is part of the occupant protection and it can reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

"Do not put at risk" your safety and the safety of those travelling with you . In the event of an accident, the safety equipment can reduce the risk of injuries. The following list contains part of the safety equipment in your vehicle:

- three-point seat belts for all the seats;
- belt force limiters for front seats;
- belt tensioners for front seats;
- seat belt height adjusters for front seats;
- front airbags for the driver and the front passenger*;
- side airbags*;
- head airbags*;
- anchoring points for child seat using the "ISOFIX" system;
- anchoring points for child seat using the "Top Tether" system;
- head restraints adjustable for height;
- adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations. The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

For this reason you will be provided with information on why this equipment is very important, how it protects you and the occupants, what should be observed when using the equipment and how you and the people travelling with you can make full use of the existing safety equipment. This Owner's Manual contains important warning notes, which you and those travelling with you should pay attention to in order to reduce a risk of injury.

Safety concerns everybody! ■

Before setting off

The driver is always fully responsible for his occupants and for the operating safety of the vehicle.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Inspect the tyre inflation pressure.

- Ensure that all the windows offer a good visibility to the outside.
- Safely attach the items of luggage ⇒ page 62, “Loading the luggage compartment”.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedal.
- Adjust the mirror, the front seat and the head restraint to match your body size.
- Point out to your occupants that the head restraints must be adjusted to match their body size.
- Protect the children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts ⇒ page 126, “Transporting children safely”.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Also inform your occupants to adopt the correct seated position.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly. Also inform your occupants to properly fasten the seat belts ⇒ page 115, “How are seat belts correctly fastened?”. ■

What influences the driving safety?

The driving safety is primarily determined by the style of driving and the personal behaviour of all the occupants.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk. Please refer to the following guidelines.

- Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your occupants or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol, drugs.
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Adjust the driving speed at all times to the road condition as well as to the traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys - at the latest every two hours. ■

Correct seated position

Correct seated position for the driver

Correct seated position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.

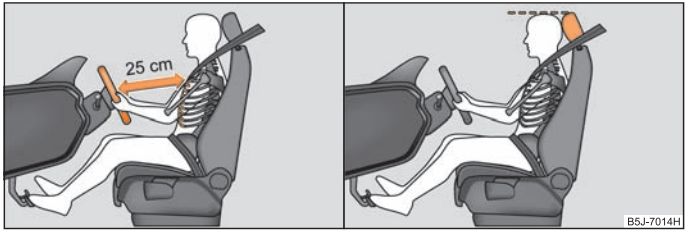


Fig. 104 The correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel / the correct head restraint adjustment for the driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ fig. 104.
- Position the driver seat in the forward/back direction so that you are able to fully press the pedals with your legs at a slight angle.
- Adjust the seat backrest so that you are able to reach the highest point of the steering wheel with your arms at a slight angle.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ fig. 104 on the right.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 115, “How are seat belts correctly fastened?”.

Driver seat adjustment ⇒ page 57, “Adjusting the front seats”.

⚠ WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be**

WARNING (continued)

correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.

- **The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ page 110, fig. 104. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed.**
- **The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate.** ■

Correct seated position for the front passenger

The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the dash panel so that the airbag offers him the greatest possible safety it is deployed.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Adjust the front passenger seat as far as possible to the rear.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 110, fig. 104 on the right.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 115, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated ⇒ page 124, "Deactivating airbags".

Adjusting the passenger seat ⇒ page 57, "Adjusting the front seats".

WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!** ■

Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats

Occupants on the rear seats must sit upright, keep the feet in the footwell and must have their seat belts correctly fastened.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- Adjust the head restraints so that the top edge of the head restraints is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 110, fig. 104 on the right.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 115, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".
- If you are transporting ⇒ page 126, "Transporting children safely" children in the vehicle, please use a suitable child restraint system.

WARNING

- **The head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size, in order to offer an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never put your feet out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If the head airbag* is deployed and when adopting an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to an increased risk of injury and in the event of an accident you may suffer fatal injuries!**
- **If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.**
- **The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!** ■

Examples of an incorrect seated position

An incorrect seated position can lead to severe injuries or death for the occupants.

Seat belts offer their optimum protection only if the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt. The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants, in particular for the children. Do not permit an occupant to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains the examples of seated positions which are dangerous for the occupants. This list is not complete, however we would like you to get interested in this subject.

Therefore, while the car is moving never:

- stand up in the vehicle;
- stand up on the seats;
- kneel on the seats;
- tilt the seat backrest fully to the back;
- lean against the dash panel;
- lie on the rear seat bench;
- only sit on the front area of the seat;
- sit to the side;
- lean out of the window;
- put the feet out of the window;
- put the feet on the dash panel;
- put the feet on the seat upholstery;
- transport somebody in the footwell;
- have the seat belt not fastened when driving;
- occupy the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.**
- **Before setting off, please adopt the correct seated position and do not change this seated position while the car is moving. Also advise your occupants to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this seated position while the car is moving.** ■

Seat belts

Why seat belts?

Fig. 105 Driver wearing seat belt

It is a proven fact that seat belts offer good protection in accidents ⇒ fig. 105. Thus wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Seat belts which have been correctly fastened and adjusted hold the occupants of the car in the correct seated position ⇒ fig. 105. The belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt, profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is optimally absorbed by the belts. The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Accident statistics prove that seat belts which are fastened and properly adjusted reduce the risk of an injury and enhance the chance of survival in a major accident ⇒ page 113.

It is important that you pay attention to safety measures, particularly when transporting children in the vehicle ⇒ page 126, "Transporting children safely".

WARNING

- **Fasten your seat belt each time before setting off, also when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!**

WARNING (continued)

- **Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child ⇒ page 115, "Fastening three-point seat belts".**
- **It is important for the belt webbing to be properly routed if the seat belts are to offer the maximum protection. You can see a description of how safety belts should be fitted properly on the next pages.**

Note

Please comply with any differing legal requirements when using the seat belts. ■

The physical principle of a frontal collision

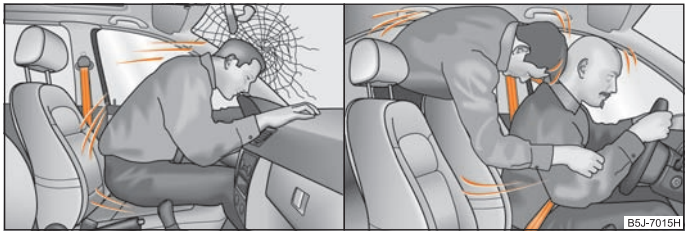


Fig. 106 The driver is catapulted forward if not wearing a belt / The rear seat occupant is catapulted forward if not wearing a belt

The physical principle of a frontal accident can be explained quite simply:

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants. The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle and the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident. ▶

The speed of the vehicle is, nevertheless, the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The common opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed within the range from 30 km/hour to 50 km/hour, the forces which are produced on your body in the event of an accident can easily exceed 10.000 N (Newton). This equals a weight of one tonne (1 000 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen, ⇒ page 113, fig. 106. The occupants of a vehicle who have not fastened their seat belts may even be thrown out of the vehicle. This can result in fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front ⇒ page 113, fig. 106 on the right. ■

Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts

The correct use of the seat belts considerably reduces the risk of injury!

⚠ WARNING

- **The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.**
- **It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 115, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".**
- **No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.**
- **The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated ⇒ page 110, "Correct seated position".**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys etc.) as this may be a cause of injuries.**
- **Bulky, loose clothing (e.g. a winter coat over a jacket) does not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.**
- **It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).**
- **The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.**
- **The seat backrests must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seat-belts can lose their effectiveness.**
- **The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel ⇒ page 157, "Seat belts".**
- **The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked by paper or similar objects otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.**
- **Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition. If you find seat belts which have damage to the belt, the seat belt connections, to the inertia reel or to the lock, the relevant safety belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.**
- **The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not make an attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.**
- **Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.**
- **In certain countries it is possible to use seat belts which differ in terms of their operation from the seat belts which are described on the pages which follow.** ■

How are seat belts correctly fastened?

Fastening three-point seat belts

Fasten your seat belt before starting!

Fig. 107 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt / Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

- Correctly adjust the seat and the head restraint before fastening your seat belt ⇒ page 110, "Correct seated position".
- Slowly pull the belt webbing at the tongue of the lock over your chest and pelvis ⇒ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue of the lock into the seat belt buckle belonging to the seat until it is heard to lock in place.
- Pull on the belt to check that it has also reliably engaged in the lock.

Each three-point seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. This inertia reel offers you complete freedom of movement if the belt is unreeled slowly. If the brakes are applied suddenly, the inertia reel will block. The belts also block when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

Expectant mothers must also wear the seat belt ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across your neck but must run approximately over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the hip and must never be routed across the stomach. It must always fit snugly ⇒ fig. 107. Adjust the belt webbing as required.**
- **The lap part of the belt should be positioned as low as possible at the pelvis of an expectant mother in order to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen.**
- **Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.**
- **A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.**
- **Only insert the lock tongue into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. This will affect the protection which the belt offers and increase the risk of an injury.** ■

Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats

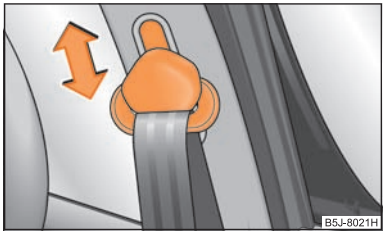


Fig. 108 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible for you to adapt the routing of the front three-point seat belt in the area of the shoulder to match your body size.

- To adjust the belt height press the height adjuster and move it up or down ⇒ fig. 108.

– Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.

Note

It is also possible to adapt the routing of the belt webbing on the front seats by adjusting the height of the seat*. ■

Taking seat belts off

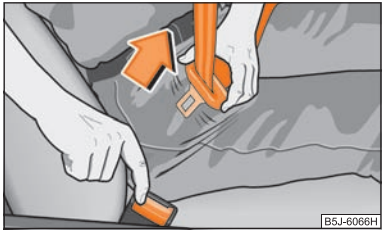


Fig. 109 Releasing lock tongue from belt lock

– Press the red button in the belt lock ⇒ fig. 109. The spring force causes the tongue of the lock to jump out.

– Guide the belt back with your hand to enable the inertia reel to wind up the belt webbing more easily.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of. ■

Three-point seat belt for the rear middle seat

The three-point seat belt for the rear middle seat is anchored in the area of the luggage compartment on the left side of the headliner.

Your car is equipped as standard with the three-point seat belt

Fastening the seat belt

– Pull the belt with both lock tongues out of the headliner mount.

– Insert the lock tongue at the end of the belt into the seat belt buckle on the left side until it is heard to lock in place.

– Pull the second lock tongue, which is moveable on the seat belt, over the chest and insert it into the belt buckle on the right side until it is heard to lock in place.

– Pull on the belt to check that both lock tongues are reliably engaged in the locks.

– The belt tongues of the three-point seat belt for the rear middle seat are shaped differently so that they only fit into the respective belt buckle. If you attempt to insert a lock tongue into the wrong belt lock it will not lock.

Taking seat belt off

– Take off the seat belt in the reverse order to fastening.

WARNING

- **The three-point safety belt for the rear middle seat can only fulfil its function reliably when the backrests are correctly locked into position ⇒ page 59.**
- **After releasing the seat belt hold it tight and let it slowly reel up until both lock tongues lock into the headliner mount and are secured with a magnet – risk of injury.**
- **Never release simultaneously both tongues of the lock.** ■

Belt tensioner

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts. ▶

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity. The belts tensioners are also deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- **Any work on the belt tightener system, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.**
- **The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.**
- **The Owner's Manual must also be handed over to the new owner if the vehicle is sold.**

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- It is essential to pay attention to relevant safety regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system are scrapped. Specialist garages are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information in this respect.
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements. ■

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

General information on the airbag system

The front airbag system is complementary to the three-point seat belts and offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and passenger in the event of a frontal collision.

In the event of a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the occupants to the part of their body facing the side of the accident.

The airbag system is only functional after the ignition has been switched on.

The operational readiness of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag indicator light comes on for a few seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

The airbag system (according to vehicle equipment) consists of:

- an electronic control unit;
- the front airbags for the driver and front passenger ⇒ page 119;
- the side airbags ⇒ page 121;
- head airbags ⇒ page 123;
- an airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 32;
- a front passenger airbag switch* ⇒ page 125;
- an indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag* in the middle of the dash panel ⇒ page 125.

A fault in the airbag system exists if:

- the airbag indicator light does not light up when the ignition is switched on;
- the airbag indicator light does not go out after about 3 seconds after the ignition is switched on;
- the airbag indicator light goes out and comes on again after the ignition is switched on;
- the airbag indicator light comes on or flickers when driving;
- an airbag indicator light showing a switched-off front passenger airbag* in the middle of the dash panel flashes.

WARNING

- **To enable the occupants of a vehicle to be protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be ⇒ page 110, "Correct seated position" correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.**
- **If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.**
- **Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.**
- **No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system.**
- **It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.**
- **The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.**
- **The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.**
- **If you sell your car, please hand over the complete vehicle documentation to the new owener. Please note that the documents relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag are also part of the vehicle documents!**
- **If the vehicle or individual parts of the airbag system are scrapped, it is essential to observe the relevant safety precautions. Specialist garages are familiar with these regulations.**
- **When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.** ■

When are the airbags deployed?

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and the front passenger airbag* are deployed in the event of a **frontal collision of major severity**.

In the case of a **violent side crash**, the side airbag* in the front seat and the head airbag* on the side on which the collision occurs are deployed.

It is also possible under certain special accident situations that the front as well as the side airbags and head airbags* are deployed at the same time.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to state globally which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation as the circumstances which exist in the case of accidents vary greatly. An important role in this case, for example, is played by factors such as the type of object against which the vehicle impacts (hard, soft), the angle of impact, the vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs during a collision. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The airbags are not deployed if:

- ignition is switched off;
- a minor frontal collision;
- a minor side collision;
- a rear-end collision;
- Rollover of the vehicle.

Note

- A grey white or red, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
  - the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
  - the hazard warning light is switched on;
  - All the doors are unlocked. ■

Front airbags

Description of the front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belt!

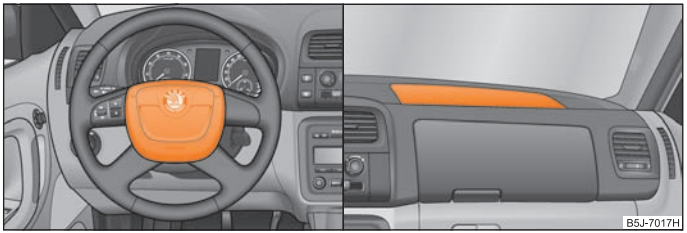


Fig. 110 Driver airbag in the steering wheel / front passenger airbag in the dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 110. The front airbag for the front passenger* is housed in the dash panel above the storage compartment ⇒ fig. 110. The installation positions are each marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The front airbag system, in combination with three-point safety belts, offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal collision of major severity ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information regarding the front airbag system" on page 120.

The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but is part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept. **Please note that an airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a seat belt which is fastened**.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and front passenger in a correct seated position in the event of a frontal collision so as to enable the front airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 113, "Why seat belts?".

Caution

The dash panel must be replaced after the front passenger airbag has been deployed. ■

Function of the front airbags

Risk of injury to the upper part of the body is reduced by fully inflated side airbags.

Fig. 111 Inflated airbags

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and front passenger airbag* are deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity.

In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are simultaneously deployed.

If the airbags are deployed, the airbags are filled with a propellant gas and inflated in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ fig. 111. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. The movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The specially developed airbag allows the gas to flow out of the inflated airbag in a controlled manner (depending on the load of the particular car occupant) in order to cushion head and chest areas. The airbag then deflates subsequently to such an extent, after an accident, to again provide a clear view forward.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information regarding the front airbag system". ■

Important safety information regarding the front airbag system

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

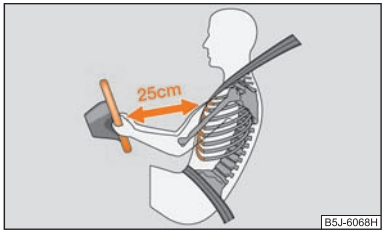


Fig. 112 Safe distance to steering wheel

WARNING

- **Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!**
- **For the driver and front passenger it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel ⇒ fig. 112. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.**

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 124, "Deactivating airbags" the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side or head passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.**
- **The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not be stuck onto, covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth or a cloth moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. may be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within the immediate area.**
- **No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system. Any work on the airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.**
- **Never carry out changes on the front bumper or on the body.**
- **Never place any objects on the surface of the dash panel on the front passenger side.** ■

Side airbags*

Description of side airbags

The side airbag increases protection of the passenger concerned in the case of a side impact.

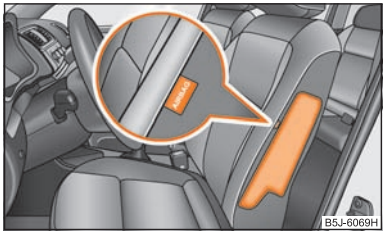


Fig. 113 Driver seat: Installation position of airbag

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats and are marked with the lettering "AIRBAG" ⇒ fig. 113 on the middle part.

The side airbag system in combination with the three-point seat belts, offers additional protection for the upper area of the body (chest, stomach and pelvis) in the event of severe side collisions ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information on the side airbag" on page 122.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and front passenger in a correct seated position in the event of a side collision so as to enable the side airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 113, "Why seat belts?". ■

Function of the side airbags

Risk of injury to the upper part of the body is reduced by fully inflated side airbags.

Fig. 114 Side airbags deployed

In the case of a **violent side crash**, the side airbag in the front seat and the head airbag on the side on which the collision occurs are deployed ⇒ fig. 114.

In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are simultaneously deployed.

If an airbag is deployed, the airbag is filled with gas. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door. ■

Important safety information on the side airbag

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 124, "Deactivating airbags" the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 128, "Child safety and side airbag*".**
- **If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries ⇒ page 126, "What you should know about transporting children!".**
- **There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as a can holder, should be attached to the doors.**
- **Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.**
- **Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!**
- **Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorised by Škoda Auto. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.**
- **Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.**
- **The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.**

▶

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

- **Any work on the side airbag system including removing and installing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing seats) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.** ■

Head airbags*

Description of the head airbags

The head airbag together with the side airbag offers enhanced occupant protection in the event of a side collision.

Fig. 115 Installation position of the head airbags

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car ⇒ fig. 115. The installation positions of the head airbags are each marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The head airbag together with the three-point seat belts and the side airbags, offers additional protection for the head and neck area of the occupants in the event of a side collision of major severity ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information on the head airbag" on page 124.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and the occupants in a correct seated position in the event of a side collision so as to enable the head airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 113.

Together with other elements (such as cross bars in the seats, stable vehicle structure) the head airbags are the consequent further development of occupant protection in the case of side collisions. ■

Function of the head airbags

The risk of injury to the head and neck area is reduced in the event of a side collision by fully inflated head airbags.

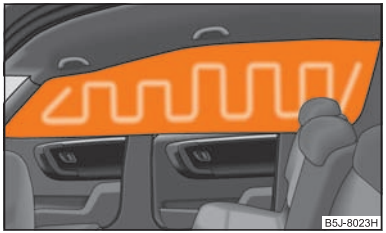


Fig. 116 Inflated head airbag

In the case of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag on the side on which the accident occurs ⇒ fig. 116.

If the system is deployed, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and covers the entire area of the side window including the door pillars ⇒ fig. 116.

The protection offered by the head airbags is thus available simultaneously both to the front occupants of the car seated on the side on which the collision occurs, as well as to the rear occupants. Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area. In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are simultaneously deployed.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle. ■

Important safety information on the head airbag

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 124 the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side or head passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.**
- **Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. In addition, it is not permitted to use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing.**
- **There must not be any other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the car occupant and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.**
- **The sun visors must not be swivelled to the side windows into the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.**
- **Installing impermissible accessories in the area of the head airbags may considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted may in certain circumstances be thrown into the interior of the car and cause injuries to the occupants ⇒ page 179.**
- **Any work on the head airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing headliner) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.** ■

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating airbags

If any airbags have been deactivated, switch them on again as soon as possible so that they are able to again provide their proper protection.

There is the technical means installed within your vehicle to switch off the front, side* or head* airbag (take out of commission).

This is why you should have the deactivation of the airbags carried out by a specialist garage.

On vehicles equipped with the switch for deactivation of the airbags, you can deactivate the front passenger airbag by means of this switch ⇒ page 125.

Deactivation of airbags is envisaged only for particular instances, such as if:

- You must in **exceptional cases** use a child seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back to the direction of travel (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to other legal regulations applying) ⇒ page 126, “Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats”;
- you are not able to maintain the distance of at least 25 cm between middle of steering wheel and chest, despite the driver seat being correctly adjusted;
- special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability;
- you have installed other seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

If the airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment:

- The airbag indicator light lights up for 3 seconds each time the ignition is switched on and then flashes after that for about 12 seconds.

If the airbag was switched off using the airbag switch* on the side of the dash panel:

- the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on for about 3 seconds each time the ignition is switched on;

- switching off the airbag is indicated in the middle of the dash panel on the right by the lighting up of the indicator light in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** ⇒ fig. 117.

Note

A specialist garage will be able to advise you whether national legislation in your country allows airbags in your vehicle to be deactivated, and which ones. ■

Switch for the front passenger airbag*

Fig. 117 Switch for the front passenger airbag / indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the switch.

Deactivating an airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the slot of the airbag switch using the ignition key in the direction of the arrow to the position **OFF** ⇒ fig. 117.
- Check whether the airbag indicator light in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel on the right lights up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ fig. 117.

Switching on an airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the slot of the airbag switch using the ignition key in the direction of the arrow to the position **ON** ⇒ fig. 117.
- Check whether the airbag indicator light in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel on the right lights up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ fig. 117.

The airbag should only be switched off under exceptional circumstances ⇒ page 124.

Indicator light in display PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (airbag switched off)

The airbag indicator light is located in the middle of the dash panel ⇒ fig. 117 on the right.

If the airbag is **switched on**, the airbag indicator light comes on for a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

In cases where the front passenger airbag is **switched off** the airbag indicator light comes on for a few seconds after switching on the ignition, goes out for about a second and then comes on again.

There is a system fault present in the airbag switch off ⇒ ⚠ if the indicator light flashes.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for whether the airbags are switched on or switched off.**
- **Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for the airbag deactivation.**
- **If the warning light OFF (airbag switched off) flashes:**
  - **Front passenger airbag is not deployed in the event of an accident!**
  - **It is also important to have the system inspected without delay by a specialist garage.** ■

Transporting children safely

What you should know about transporting children!

An introduction to the subject

Accident statistics have revealed that children are generally more safely transported on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

Children who are less than 1.50 m in height and who weigh less than 36 kg should, under normal circumstances, sit on the rear seat (take note of any national legal provisions which differ from this). They should be secured there by means of a child restraint system or by using the existing seat belts depending on their body size and weight. The child seat should be mounted behind the front passenger seat for safety reasons.

The physical principle of an accident does, of course, also apply to children ⇒ page 113, "The physical principle of a frontal collision". They differ from adults in that their muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported by using special child safety seats in order to reduce this risk of injury.

Only use child safety seats which are officially approved, suitable for children and which comply with the standard ECE-R 44, which classifies child safety seats into 5 groups ⇒ page 128, "Classification of child seats into groups". Child restraint systems which have been tested for conformity to ECE-R 44 standard have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

We recommend that you use child safety seats from the Škoda genuine accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in Škoda vehicles. They fulfil the ECE-R 44 standard.

WARNING

Always comply with national legal provisions and instructions from the relevant child safety seat manufacturer when installing and using a child seat ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats".

Note

National legal provisions, which deviate from the information contained in these operating instructions, take precedence over the information contained in the operating instructions. ■

Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- **All the occupants of the vehicle – particularly children – must wear a seat belt when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Children who are less than 1.50 m in height and who weigh less than 36 kg must not use a normal seat belt without a child restraint system, otherwise this may result in injuries to the stomach and neck areas. Comply with the national legal requirements.**
- **One should never carry children, and also not babies! – on one's lap.**
- **You can transport a child safely in a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 128, "Child seat"!**
- **Only one child may be fastened with a seat belt into a child safety seat.**
- **Never leave the child sitting unattended in the seat.**
- **Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.**
- **Never allow your child to be transported in a vehicle without the use of a suitable restraint system.**
- **Children should also never stand up in a vehicle or kneel on the seats when the vehicle is moving. In the event of an accident the child will be thrown through the vehicle and may as a result suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.**
- **Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle** ▶

WARNING (continued)

is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat if the airbag system deploys in the event of an accident. This can result in severe or even fatal injuries.

- **It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 115, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?". Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.**
- **Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.**
- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat to the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel ⇒ page 124. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.** ■

Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat

Child safety seats should always be attached to the rear seats.

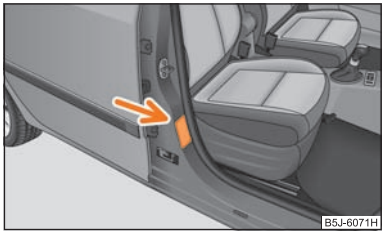


Fig. 118 Sticker on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side.

We recommend, for safety reasons, that you always mount a child restraint systems on the rear seats whenever possible. If you still decide, however, to use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat then you must pay attention to the following warnings in connection with the use of the airbag system on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

- **Warning - particular hazard! Never use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.**
- **This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side ⇒ fig. 118. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. For some countries, the sticker is also affixed to the sun visor of the front passenger.**
- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when a child safety seat is nevertheless attached to the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel ⇒ page 124, "Deactivating airbags". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the front passenger side airbag or the front passenger head airbag be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **If the front passenger airbag has been switched off by a specialist garage using the vehicle system tester, the side airbag* or the head airbag* and the passenger belt tensioner remain switched on. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **If a child safety seat in which the child faces in the direction of travel is used on the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat must be moved back and to the top fully. Move the seat backrest into the vertical position.**
- **You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.** ■

Child safety and side airbag*

Children must never be seated in the deployment area of the side airbags and head airbags.

Fig. 119 Unprotected child / Child properly protected by safety seat

Side airbags* offer the vehicle occupants enhanced protection in the event of a collision from the side.

The side airbags are inflated in fractions of a second in order to be able to provide this protection ⇒ page 122, “Function of the side airbags”.

An airbag inflating develops such a strong force that an occupant who has not adopted a correct seated position may suffer injuries. Also exposed objects which are located within the area of the side airbag can cause injuries.

This applies particularly to children if they are not transported in accordance with legal requirements.

The child is protected when seated in a child safety seat matching its age. Adequate room is available between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag and head airbag. The airbag offers optimal protection.

⚠ WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat to the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel ⇒ page 124. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

- **When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!**
- **Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!** ■

Child seat

Classification of child seats into groups

Only child safety seats which have an official approval and are suitable for the child, may be used.

ECE-R 44 standard applies to child safety seats. ECE-R means: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child safety seats which have been tested for conformity to ECE-R 44 standard have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

Child safety seats are classified in 5 groups:

Group	Weight	
0	0 - 10 kg	⇒ page 129
0+	up to 13 kg	⇒ page 129
1	9 - 18 kg	⇒ page 129
2	15 - 25 kg	⇒ page 130
3	22 - 36 kg	⇒ page 130

Children who are more than 1.50 m in height or who weigh more than 36 kg can use the normal seat belts without a seat bolster. ■

Use of child seats

An overview of the usefulness of child seats on each of the seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard:

Child seat of the group	Front passenger seat	Rear seat outside	Rear seat middle
0	U	U + T	U T a)
0+	U	U + T	U T a)
1	U	U + T	U T a)
2 and 3	U	U	U

a) Only valid for some countries.

U Universal category - seat is suitable for all approved types of child safety seats.
+ The seat can be fitted with fixing eyes for the "**ISOFIX***"system.
T The seat is equipped as standard with the fixing system "**Top Tether**". ■

Child seats of group 0/0+

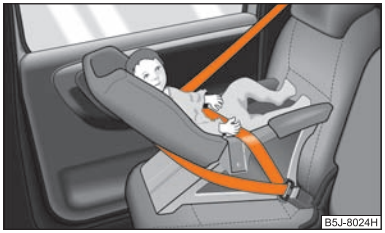


Fig. 120 Child seats of group 0/0+

The optimal solution for babies of up to about 9 months old weighing up to 10 kg or children up to about 18 months old weighing up to 13 kg is a child safety seat which is fastened in the opposite direction of travel ⇒ fig. 120.

Child seats in which the child is facing with its back towards the direction of travel should not be used on the front passenger seat when the vehicle is fitted with a front passenger airbag ⇒ page 127, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag at a specialist garage or with the switch for front passenger airbag* when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel ⇒ page 125.**
- **Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.**
- **You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.** ■

Child safety seats in Group 1

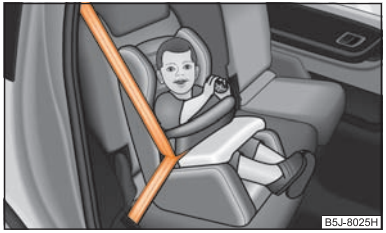


Fig. 121 Child seat with padded table in Group 1 installed on rear seat bench facing the direction of travel

Child seats in Group 1 are for babies and small children up to 4 years of age with a weight of between 9 and 18 kilograms. It is best for children in the lower range of this ▶

group, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit with its back to the direction of travel. It is best for children in the upper range of the Group 0+, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit ⇒ fig. 121 in the direction of travel.

Child seats in which the child is facing with its back towards the direction of travel should not be used on the front passenger seat when the vehicle is fitted with a front passenger airbag ⇒ page 127, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

⚠ WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag at a specialist garage or with the switch for front passenger airbag* when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel ⇒ page 125.**
- **Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.**
- **You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.** ■

Child safety seats in Group 2

Fig. 122 Child seat in Group 2 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

For children up to about 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg the optimal solution is a child safety seat in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 122.

⚠ WARNING

- **When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. Switch off the front passenger airbag if necessary at a specialist garage or switch it off with the switch for front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 125.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.**
- **Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.** ■

Child safety seats in Group 3

Fig. 123 Child seat in Group 3 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

For children of about 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg and of a height of less than 150 cm, the optimal solution is a child safety seat (seat bolster) in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 123.

Children who are more than 1.50 m in height or who weigh more than 36 kg can use the normal seat belts without a seat bolster.

⚠ WARNING

- **When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**

WARNING (continued)

Switch off the front passenger airbag if necessary at a specialist garage or switch it off with the switch for front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 125.

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.**
- **Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.** ■

Attaching a child seat using the "ISOFIX" system*

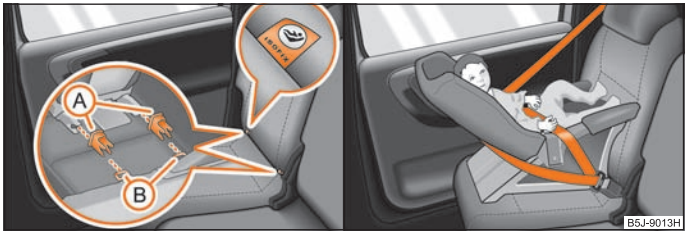


Fig. 124 Locking eyes (ISOFIX system) / the ISOFIX child seat is pushed into the mounting funnels

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seat backrest and the surface of the seat itself on both sides for fixing the "ISOFIX" system child seat in place.

- Insert the mounting funnels (A) onto the locking eyes (B) between the seat backrest and the seat cushion ⇒ fig. 124.
- Push the notched arms of the child seat into the locking eyes until they are heard to lock in place ⇒ fig. 124.
- **Pull on both sides of the child seat!**

One can mount a child safety seat using the "ISOFIX" system quickly, easily and reliably. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.

Child seats fitted with the "ISOFIX" system can only be mounted and fixed in a vehicle fitted with an "ISOFIX" system when these child seats have been released for this type of vehicle according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Child safety seats with the fixing system "ISOFIX" can be obtained from Škoda original accessories.

Complete installation instructions are enclosed with the child safety seat.

WARNING

- **The locking eyes have just been developed for child safety seats which use the "ISOFIX" system. You should therefore never attach other child safety seats, seat belts or objects to the locking eyes – hazard!**
- **Ask a specialist garage whether a child seat which you bought for another vehicle is recommended for use in your vehicle before using a child seat with "ISOFIX" system.**
- **Certain child seats which use the "ISOFIX" system can be attached with standard three-point seat belts. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.**

Note

- Child seats which use the "ISOFIX" system are currently available for children weighing up to about 18 kg. This corresponds to an age range up to 4 years.
- The child seats can also be fitted with the "Top Tether" system ⇒ page 132. ■

Attaching child seat using the “Top Tether” system

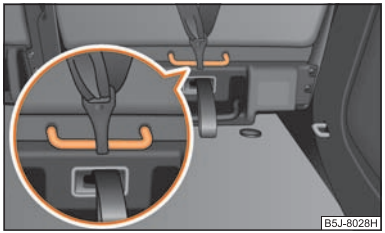


Fig. 125 Rear seat: Top Tether

The rear exterior seats and/or the middle seat (only valid for some countries) are equipped as standard with the attachment system “Top Tether” at the rear of the seat backrest for enhancing the child safety ⇒ fig. 125. Always perform the installation and removal as stated in the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat.

WARNING

- **Attach the child seats with the “Top Tether” system only to the points provided for this purpose ⇒ fig. 125.**
- **On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.**
- **Pay attention to the important safety information regarding the use of child seats ⇒ page 126.**

Note

Store the remaining part of the belt for the “Top Tether” system in a textile pocket, which is located at the child seat. ■

Driving Tips

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stability programme (ESP)*

General

General

The ESP aids you in maintaining control of your vehicle in situations in which the vehicle is driving at its dynamic limits, such as entering a curve fast. The risk of skidding is reduced and your vehicle thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface. The system operates at all speeds.

The following systems are integrated into the electronic stability programme:

- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL);
- Traction control system (TCS);
- Antilock brake system (ABS);
- Brake Assist;
- Uphill Start Assist

Operating principle

The ESP switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The ESP control unit processes data from the individual systems. It also processes additional measurement data which are supplied by highly sensitive sensors: the rotational velocity of the vehicle about its vertical axis, the lateral acceleration of the vehicle, the braking pressure and the steering angle.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the vehicle beginning to skid, the ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

The car is stabilised again by the forces which take effect when the wheel is braked. Intervention into the brake system takes place primarily on the outer front wheel of a vehicle which tends to oversteer (tendency for the rear of the vehicle to break away) while occurs this is on the inner rear wheel of a vehicle which tends to understeer (tendency to shift out of the curve). This braking control cycle is accompanied by noises.

If the ESP helps to stabilise the vehicle (for example when applying and releasing a braking force to an individual wheel), then the indicator light flashes quickly.

The ESP system cannot be switched off, only the TCS system can be switched off by pressing the button ⇒ page 134, fig. 126. The warning light ⇒ page 30 lights up if the TCS system is switched off.

The warning light lights up permanently if there is a fault in the ESP system.

The fact that the ESP system operates together with the ABS means that the ESP warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ESP system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the ESP system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the ESP system is fully functional again.

WARNING

It is also not possible for the ESP to overcome the physical limits of the vehicle. Even if a vehicle fitted with ESP you should still always adapt your style of driving to the condition of the road surface and the traffic situation. This particularly applies when driving on slippery and wet roads. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!

Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the ESP. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.

- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ESP ⇒ page 179, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when accelerating.

Fig. 126 TCS switch

General

The TCS makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

Operating principle

The TCS switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The system monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. If the wheels are spinning, the force transmitted to the road surface is automatically adapted by reducing the engine speed. The system operates at all speeds.

The TCS operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 136, "Antilock brake system (ABS)". The TCS will not function if a fault exists in the ABS system.

Switching off

You can switch the TCS off and on again as you wish by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 126. The TCS warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCS is switched off ⇒ page 30.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. It may be good practice in certain exceptional cases, such as when you wish to have wheel slip, to switch off the system.

Examples:

- when driving with snow chains;
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface;
- when it is necessary to rock a vehicle when it has become stuck.

then you should switch on the TCS again.

WARNING

You should always adjust your style of driving to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!

Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the TCS. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the TCS ⇒ page 179, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)*

The electronic differential lock prevents an individual wheel from slipping.

Models fitted with ESP are equipped with electronic differential lock (EDL).

General

The EDL makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable. ▶

Operating principle

The EDL is activated automatically, that is without any action on the part of the driver. It monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. Should only **one** drive wheel begin spinning on a slippery surface there will be an appreciable difference in the speed of the driven wheels. The EDL function brakes the slipping wheel and the differential transmits a greater driving force to the other driven wheel. This control process is also accompanied by noises.

Overheating of the brakes

The EDL switches off automatically if unusually severe stresses exist in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake on the wheel which is being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL.

The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

WARNING

- **Carefully depress the accelerator when accelerating on uniformly slippery road surfaces, such as ice and snow. The driven wheels might still spin despite the EDL and affect the stability of the vehicle – risk of an accident!**
- **You should always adapt your style of driving to the condition of road surface and to the traffic situation even when your vehicle is fitted with EDL. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!**

Note

- If the ABS or TCS or ESP warning light comes on, this may also indicate a fault in the EDL. Please have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible by a specialist garage.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the EDL ⇒ page 179, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Brakes

What has a negative effect on braking efficiency?

Wear-and-tear

Wear-and-tear to the brake pads is greatly dependent on the operating conditions of the vehicle and your style of driving. Particularly if you drive a great deal in towns and over short distances or if you adopt a sporty style of driving, it may be necessary to have the thickness of the brake pads inspected at a specialist garage between the service inspections.

Wet roads or road salt

There may be a certain delay before the brakes take full effect under certain conditions such as when driving through water, during heavy rain showers or after the vehicle has been washed in an automatic vehicle wash, since the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or even have a coating of ice on them in winter. You should dry the brakes as soon as possible by applying and releasing the brakes several times.

There also may be a certain delay before the full braking efficiency is available when driving on roads which have been treated with road salt if you have not used the brakes for some considerable time beforehand. The layer of salt on the brake discs and brake pads must first be rubbed off when you apply the brakes.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system.

We recommend cleaning the brake discs by firmly applying the brakes at a fairly high speed if you do not make much use of the braking system or if surface corrosion is present ⇒ ⚠.

Faults in the brake surface

If you notice that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, it is possible that a brake circuit of the dual-circuit brake system has failed. Drive, in such cases, to the nearest specialist garage without delay in order to have the problem rectified. Drive at a reduced speed while on your way to the dealer and adapt your style of driving to the higher brake pedal pressure required. ▶

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically ⇒ page 31, “Brake system (!)”.

WARNING

- **Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.**
- **When retrospectively mounting a front spoiler, solid wheel hubs etc. one must ensure that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced otherwise the braking system could run too hot.**
- **Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until approximately 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first “run in” before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal. This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.**

Caution

- Never allow the brakes to rub by applying slight pressure if you do not wish to brake the vehicle. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.
- Before negotiating a steep downhill section, please reduce your speed and shift down into the next lower gear (manual gearbox) or select a lower driving stage (automatic gearbox). This enables you to make full use of the braking power of the vehicle and reduces the strain on the brakes. Any additional braking should be done intermittently, not continuously.

Note

The brake light flashes automatically in case of an emergency braking at speeds greater than 60 km/h or with the intervention of the ABS, which lasts longer than 1.5 seconds. After the speed was reduced below 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again. ■

Brake booster

The brake booster boosts the pressure which you generate with the brake pedal. The necessary pressure is only generated when the engine is running.

WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary.**
- **The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries.** ■

Antilock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking.

General

The ABS contributes significantly to enhancing the active safety of your vehicle. Compared to a vehicle not fitted with the ABS brake system, you are able to retain optimal steering ability even during a full brake application on a slippery road surface because the wheels do not lock up.

You must not expect, however, that the braking distance will be shorter under all circumstances as a result of the ABS. The braking distance for example on gravel and fresh snow, when you should anyway be driving slowly and cautiously, will be longer.

Operating principle

As soon as the vehicle speed has increased to about 20 km/hour an automatic test procedure is conducted during which you will be able to hear a pumping noise for about 1 second.

The brake pressure will be reduced on a wheel which is rotating at a speed which is too low for the speed of the vehicle and tending to lock. This control cycle is noticeable from a **pulsating movement of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises. This is consciously intended to provide the driver with the information that the wheels are tending to lock (ABS control range). You must always keep the brake pedal depressed to enable the ABS to optimally control the brake application in this braking range. Never interrupt the application of the brakes! ▶

WARNING

- **The ABS can also not overcome the physical limits of your vehicle. Please do not forget this, particularly when driving on icy or wet road surfaces. If the ABS is operating within the control range, adapt your speed immediately to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered by the ABS must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise - risk of an accident!**
- **The normal braking system is still fully functional if there is an ABS fault. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving to take account of the ABS fault in the meantime since you will not know the extent of the fault and in how far the braking efficiency is affected.**

Note

- A warning light comes on if a fault occurs in the ABS system (ABS) ⇒ page 31.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ABS ⇒ page 179, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Brake Assist*

During a severe brake application (e.g. if a hazard exists), the Brake Assist increases the braking force and thus makes it possible to rapidly produce the pressure required in the brake system.

The majority of drivers do apply the brakes in good time in dangerous situations, but do not depress the brake pedal with sufficient pressure. Consequently, it is not possible for the vehicle to achieve its maximum deceleration and the vehicle covers a greater distance than necessary.

The Brake Assist is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In such cases, a much greater braking pressure exists than during a normal brake application. This makes it possible, even with a relatively low resistance of the brake pedal, to produce an adequate pressure in the brake system in the shortest possible time, which is required for maximum deceleration of the vehicle. You must apply the brake pedal firmly and hold it in this position in order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance.

The Brake Assist is able to help you achieve a shorter braking distance in emergency situations by rapidly producing the pressure required in the brake system. It fully exploits the attributes of the ABS. After you release the brake pedal, the function of the Brake Assist is automatically switched off and the brakes operate in the normal way.

The Brake Assist is part of the ESP system. If a fault occurs in the ESP, the Brake Assist function is also not available. Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 133.

WARNING

- **The Brake Assist is also not able to overcome the physical limits of your vehicle in terms of the braking distance required.**
- **Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.**
- **The increased safety offered by the Brake Assist must not tempt you to take a greater safety risk than otherwise.** ■

Uphill Start Assist*

The uphill start assist makes it easier to start off on steep hills. The system assists a start off by holding the brake pressure produced by the brake pedal actuation for approx. 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal. The driver can therefore move his foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal and start off on the slope, without having to actuate the handbrake. The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The uphill start assist is active as of a 3% slope, if the driver door is closed. It is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive. ■

Electrohydraulic power steering

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

The steering characteristics can be changed by a specialist garage. ▶

You will place great stresses on the power steering system if the steering is turned to full lock when the vehicle is stationary. Turning the steering to full lock in such a situation will be accompanied by noises.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (vehicle being towed in). The only difference is that greater physical effort is required.

It is possible that the hydraulic pump of the power steering will not run due to the low vehicle network voltage if the battery has gone flat and the engine must started with the help off jump leads. This condition will be indicated by lighting up of the warning light.

The power steering operates again if the battery is charged to a specific range when engine is running. It also operates again, if the engine can be started with its own battery.

If there is a fault in the power steering, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 25.

Caution

Do not leave the steering at full lock for more than 15 seconds when the engine is running - risk of damaging the power steering!

Note

Have the steering inspected as soon as possible by a specialist garage if there is a leak or fault in the system. ■

Tyre pressure monitoring system*

Fig. 127 Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

The tyre pressure monitoring system compares with the aid of the ABS sensors the speed and also the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. If the tyre inflation pressure is significantly changed and thus the rolling circumference of a wheel, the warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 30. The tyre pressure monitoring system functions late or too sensitively if:

- the structure of the tyre is damaged,
- the vehicle is loaded to one side or with a load on the roof,
- the wheels of an axle are loaded heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill),
- the vehicle is operated in unfavourable winter conditions or on an unfirm ground,
- snow chains or emergency wheel are mounted,
- the driver has a sporty style of driving (with sharp acceleration and high speed when cornering).

Basic setting of the system

After changing the tyre inflation pressures or after changing one or several wheels, a basic setting of the system must be carried out as follows.

- Inflate all tyres to the specified inflation pressure ⇒ page 173.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press button SET (!) ⇒ fig. 127 for more than 2 seconds. While pressing the button, the warning light (!) lights up. At the same time the basic values are stored, which is confirmed with an acoustic sound and then the warning light (!) goes out. ▶

- If the warning light (!) does not go out after the basic setting, there is a fault in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your nearest specialist garage.

Functional description

After the basic setting of the system the "adaptation" of the tyre inflation pressures and then the tyre pressure control in the individual tyres are performed.

Warning light (!) lights up

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least one wheel is insufficiently inflated in comparison to the stored basic value, the warning light (!) ⇒ ⚠ lights up. Inflate all tyres to the specified inflation pressure ⇒ page 173, "Tyre life" and then perform a basic setting of the system.

Warning light (!) flashes

If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Have the vehicle inspected by your nearest specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the warning light (!) lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Please stop the vehicle without delay at the nearest possible stop and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressures.**
- **The driver is responsible for the correct tyre inflation pressures. For this reason, the tyre inflation pressures must be checked regularly.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) can be delayed or does not light up at all.**
- **The tyre pressure monitoring system does not take away the responsibility from the driver for the correct tyre inflation pressure.**

Note

The tyre pressure monitoring system:

- does not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, because the system cannot detect an even pressure loss;
- cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements and without sharp braking. ■

Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)

In the diesel particle filter the resulting soot particles are collected and burnt during the combustion of diesel fuel.

Fig. 128 Vehicle data sticker

Code **7GG**, **7MB** or **7MG** on the vehicle data sticker, see ⇒ fig. 128, indicates that your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particle filter. The vehicle data sticker is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the Service schedule.

The diesel particle filter filters the soot particles completely from the exhaust. The soot is collected in the diesel particle filter and burnt regularly. To assist this procedure, we recommend not to drive regularly over short distances.

If the diesel particle filter is clogged or there is a fault, it is indicated by the warning light ⇒ page 32, "Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)".

⚠ WARNING

- **The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park at points where the hot filter comes into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – risk of fire!**
- **Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filter or heat shields.** ▶

WARNING (continued)

When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite – risk of fire!

Note

- When using diesel fuel with high sulphur content the life of the diesel particle filter is clearly reduced. A specialist garage will be able to tell you which countries use only diesel fuel with high sulphur content. ■

Driving and the Environment

The first 1 500 kilometres and then afterwards

A new engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, that is 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- Do not use full throttle.
- Avoid high engine revolutions.
- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

- Increase the power output of the engine **gradually** up to the full speed of the gear engaged, that is up to the maximum permissible engine revolutions.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your vehicle.

You should not drive at unnecessarily **high engine revolutions** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the beginning of the red zone on the scale of the revolutions counter. Shift up into the next higher gear on a vehicle fitted with manual gearbox before the red zone is reached. During acceleration (depressing the accelerator) **exceptionally** high engine speeds are automatically reduced, yet the engine is not protected against too high engine speeds which are caused by incorrectly shifting down the gears resulting in a sudden increase of the engine speeds above the permitted maximum revolutions which can lead to engine damage.

For a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox the converse situation also applies: Do not drive at engine revolutions which are **too low**. Shift down as soon as the engine is no longer running smoothly.

Caution

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature. Never rev up an engine which is cold, neither when the vehicle is stationary nor when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Not driving at unnecessarily high engine revolutions and shifting to a higher gear as early as possible are ways to minimise fuel consumption, operating noise levels as well as protects the environment and contributes to a longer life and reliability of the engine. ■

New tyres

New tyres have to be “run in” since they do not offer optimal grip at first. You should take account of this fact for the first 500 kilometres and drive particularly carefully. ■

New brake pads

Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until approximately 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first “run in” before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal.

This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.

During the running-in period, you should avoid excessive stresses on the brakes. This includes, for example, violent braking, particularly from very high speeds, and also when crossing mountain passes. ■

Catalytic converter

Proper operation of the emission control system (catalytic converter) is of major significance for driving your vehicle in an environmentally conscious way.

Please refer to the following guidelines:

- For vehicles with petrol engine only refuel with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 158, “Grades of petrol”.
- Never run the fuel tank completely empty.
- Do not switch off the ignition while you are driving the vehicle.
- Do not pour too much oil into the engine ⇒ page 164, “Replenishing engine oil”.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle over a distance of more than 50 metres ⇒ page 189, “Tow-starting a vehicle”.

If you drive your vehicle in a country in which unleaded petrol is not available, you must have the catalytic converter replaced later when driving the vehicle into a country in which use of a catalytic converter is mandatory.

WARNING

- **In view of the high temperatures which may be produced in the catalytic converter, one should always park a vehicle in such a way that the catalytic converter cannot come into contact with easily flammable materials below the vehicle – a risk of fire!**
- **Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. Such substances might ignite when driving – risk of fire!**

Caution

- On vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter, never let the fuel tank run completely empty. An irregular fuel supply can result in poor ignition or misfiring. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.
- Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed.
- If you detect misfiring, a drop in performance or irregular engine running when driving, reduce your speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected by the nearest specialist garage. The symptoms described may be caused by a fault in the ignition system. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Even if the exhaust system is operating properly, a sulphur-like exhaust odour may be produced under certain operating conditions of the engine. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel. It is often sufficient to refuel with unleaded premium-grade petrol of a different brand or at a different filling station. ■

Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner

General

Your personal style of driving is a major factor.

Your fuel consumption, any pollution of the environmental and the wear-and-tear to the engine, brakes and tyres, depend essentially on three factors:

- your personal style of driving;
- the conditions under which your vehicle is operated;
- technical aspects.

You can easily improve your fuel economy by 10 - 15 percent by driving in an economical way with foresight. This section is intended to provide you with a number of tips on how to protect the environment and at the same time save money.

The fuel consumption can naturally also be influenced by factors which are beyond the driver's control. It is, for example, normal for the fuel consumption to increase in winter and under worsened conditions such as poor road conditions, towing a trailer, etc.

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. Special attention has been given to minimising negative effects on the environment. It is necessary to take note of the ▶

guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness. ■

Looking ahead when driving

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs it accelerates.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily. If you drive with forsight you will not need to brake so often and will also then not have to accelerate so much. Let your vehicle coast to a stop, for example, if this is possible, when you see that the next set of traffic lights is at red. ■

Shifting gears and saving energy

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

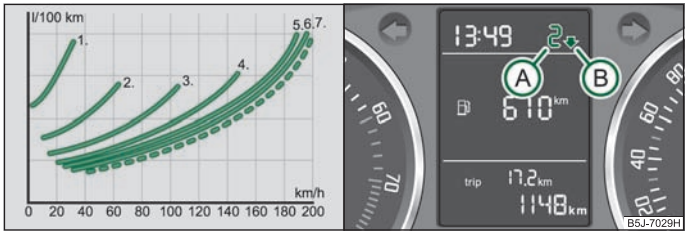


Fig. 129 Fuel consumption / Shift recommendation for changing gears

Manual gearbox

- Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- Shift up into the next higher gear at approx. 2 000 to 2 500 revs.

Automatic gearbox

- Depress the accelerator pedal **slowly**. Do not depress it beyond the kickdown position, however.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. You will consume more fuel if you drive at unnecessarily high revolutions in any given gear.

The ⇒ fig. 129 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle in the relevant gear. Fuel consumption in 1st gear is the highest. The consumption is the lowest in the highest gear.

You will achieve good fuel economy by shifting up early and shifting down late.

Shift recommendation for changing gears*

An information for the engaged gear (A) ⇒ fig. 129 is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

If the control unit recognises that it is appropriate to change the gear, an arrow (B) is shown in the display. The arrow points up or down, depending on whether it is recommended to shift into a higher or lower gear.

At the same time, the recommended gear is indicated instead of the currently engaged gear (A).

Note

Also use the information supplied by the multi-functional indicator* ⇒ page 18. ■

Avoiding full throttle

Driving more slowly means saving fuel.

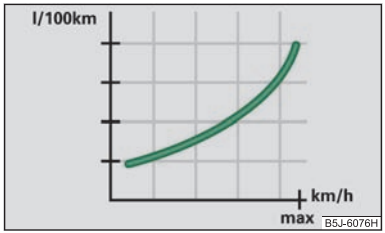


Fig. 130 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle. ▶

You should avoid exploiting the top speed of your vehicle wherever possible. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The ⇒ page 143, fig. 130 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. You will cut your fuel consumption by half if you only make use three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle. ■

Reducing idling

Idling also costs fuel.

It is worthwhile switching off the engine in a traffic jam or when waiting at a level crossing or at traffic lights with a lengthy red phase. Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. This is why you should drive off right after starting the engine. Do avoid high engine revolutions at this time, however. ■

Regular servicing

A poorly tuned engine consumes an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

Having your vehicle serviced regularly at a specialist garge enables you to satisfy **one** of the requirements for economical motoring even before you set off on your journey. Keeping your vehicle properly serviced not only has a positive effect on the safety of your vehicle and maintaining its value, but also saves on **fuel**.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10% higher than normal.

The foreseen maintenance work should be undertaken exactly according to the Service schedule by a specialist garage.

Also check the **oil level** after refueling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. It is therefore not possible to correctly assess the oil consumption of a new vehicle until after you have driven about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- You can achieve additional improvements in your fuel economy by using high-lubricity oils.
- Check the ground below your vehicle at regular intervals to detect any leakages in good time. Please have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garge if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the floor. ■

Avoid driving short distances

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption.

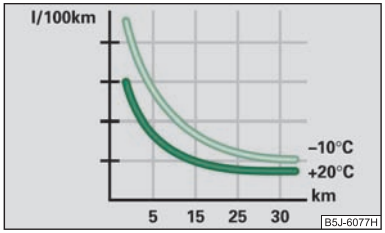


Fig. 131 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km at different temperatures

– Avoid driving a distance of no more than 4 km if the engine is cold.

The engine and catalytic converter must first have reached their optimal **operating temperature** in order to effectively reduce fuel consumption and pollutant emissions.

The cold engine vehicle consumes approx. 15 - 20 litres/100 km of fuel immediately after starting. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The engine reaches its operating temperature (outside temperature and engine dependent) only after about **4 to 10** kilometres and the fuel consumption then stabilizes. You should therefore avoid driving short distances whenever possible.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The ⇒ fig. 131 shows the different fuel consumptions for the same distance, on the one ▶

hand at +20°C and on the other hand at -10°C. Your vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer. ■

Checking tyre inflation pressures

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure that your tyres are inflated to the correct pressure at all times. The rolling resistance will be increased if the tyre filling pressure is too low. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the inflation pressure of the tyres when **cold**.

Do not drive with **winter tyres** all year round for this costs about 10 % more fuel. Winter tyres are also louder. ■

No unnecessary ballast

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

The fact that every kilogram of extra **weight** increases your fuel consumption means that it is worth taking a look in the luggage compartment to avoid transporting any unnecessary ballast.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

You may frequently also leave a **roof rack fitted** on just out of convenience, although you no longer need it. The increased aerodynamic drag of your vehicle causes it to use about 1 l more fuel than normal at a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, even when you are not carrying a load on the roof. ■

Saving electricity

Generating electricity costs fuel.

– Switch off electrical components as soon as you no longer need them.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. The greater the load on the alternator as a result of having a large number of electrical components switched on, the more fuel will be consumed for operating the alternator. ■

Keeping a log of your fuel consumption

If you really wish to keep a close check on your **fuel consumption**, it is best to enter the figures in a logbook. This does not take much time but is a very worthwhile exercise. It enables you to detect any change (positive and negative) at an early stage and to take any appropriate action.

If you find that your fuel consumption is too high, you should reflect on how, where and in what conditions you have driven the vehicle since you last refuelled. ■

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials and manufacture of your new Škoda. Particular emphasis has been paid to a number of aspects, including:

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation°260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.

- Reduction in the “vaporisation” of plastics.

Manufacture

- Solvent-free cavity protection.
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

Škoda Auto meets the requirements of the brand and its products regarding environment and ressource protection. All new Škoda vehicles can be utilized up to 95% and always [12] be returned. In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Vehicles with special built-on types

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to hand over later to the old car user. This ensures the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations. ■

Motoring abroad

General

Other circumstances may exist abroad.

It is also possible, in certain countries, that the Škoda Service Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why obtaining certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garage personnel may only be able to make limited repairs. Škoda Auto in the Czech Republic and relevant importers are happy to provide information about technical aspects of the vehicle, required maintenance work and possibilities for getting repairs done. ■

Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 142. The automobile associations can provide you with information regarding the locations of filling stations which offer unleaded petrol. ■

Headlights

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which you are driving to a greater extent. If you drive abroad on the other side of the road, you will dazzle oncoming traffic.

Halogen projector headlights

The adaptation of the headlights (valid for vehicles which are designed for driving on the left and on the right) must be performed by switching over a bezel by a specialist garage.

Halogen headlight

When using Halogen headlights, it is necessary to stick a sticker over a certain part of the headlights in order to prevent the dazzling of oncoming traffic.

You can purchase headlight stickers from the range of the Škoda original parts.

Note

You can obtain further information regarding masking over or converting the headlights from your specialist garage. ■

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

When driving on poor roads and lanes or when driving over kerbstones, steep ramps etc., you must pay particular attention to ensuring that any low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as spoiler and exhaust, do not touch the ground and get damaged. ▶

[12] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

This particularly applies to models with a lowered suspension (sport suspension) and also when your vehicle is fully laden. ■

Driving through bodies of water on roads

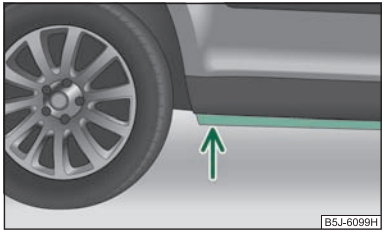


Fig. 132 Crossing bodies of water

In order to avoid damage to the vehicle, for example when driving through flooded roads, observe the following:

- Determine the depth of the water when driving through bodies of water. The water can reach at the maximum the web on the lower sill of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 132.
- Drive no more than at walking speed. At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.
- Never let the vehicle stand in the water, never drive backwards and do not switch off the engine.

WARNING

- **Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can reduce the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!**
- **Avoid sudden and severe braking manoeuvres immediately after driving through bodies of water.**
- **After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.**

Caution

- When driving through bodies of water, parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, catalytic converter, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Immediately rinse all the parts of the vehicle, which came into contact with the salt water, with fresh water.

Note

After driving through a body of water, we recommend that the vehicle is checked by a specialist garage. ■

Towing a trailer

Towing a trailer

Technical requirements

The towing device must satisfy certain technical requirements.

Your vehicle is designed primarily for transporting persons and luggage. It can, however, also be used for towing a trailer - provided certain technical equipment is fitted.

If your vehicle has been equipped with a towing device from Škoda Original Accessories, then the towing device satisfies all technical and legal requirements.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer which you wish to tow has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter [13] from Škoda original accessories.

This work must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications if a towing device is retrofitted.

Specialist garages are familiar with details relating to retrofitting a towing device and for any necessary modifications to the cooling system.

WARNING

We recommend that you have the towing device from Škoda original accessories installed by a specialist garage. He is familiar with all the relevant details relating to retrofitting such equipment. There is a risk of an accident if the towing device is not properly fitted! ■

General Maintenance

There are a number of points to pay attention to when towing a trailer.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must on no account be exceeded.

You can negotiate appropriately steeper inclines and descents if you do not make full use of the permissible trailer load.

The trailer loads specified only apply for **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level. On petrol engines without forced induction, the engine power output drops with increasing height due to a lowering of air pressure and thus the ability to climb, this means that the trailer load must be reduced by 10% for every further increase of 1 000 metres in height above sea level. The towed weight is the weight of the (laden) vehicle and the (laden) trailer together. One should take this into account before driving up to higher altitudes. Petrol engines with forced induction use an air pressure correction method, so that their power output does not depend on the height above sea level.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device The data relating to your vehicle, which is often less than this test data, can be found in your vehicle registration documents.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that any heavy items are located as close as possible to the axle. Secure the items to prevent them slipping.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for that of "fully laden", ⇒ page 173. The inflation pressure of the tyres fitted to the trailer adjust in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. Both exterior mirrors should be attached to folding arms. Adjust the mirrors so that they provide you with an adequate field of view to the rear.

Headlights

Before starting off with a hitched trailer, also check the setting of the headlights. Alter the setting as necessary with the aid of the headlight beam adjuster ⇒ page 49. ▶

[13] In some countries the adapter is supplied with the towing device.

Detachable ball head

The ball rod is detachable on vehicles with towing device and suppliable from Škoda original accessories. It is stowed together with separate fitting instructions in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment of the vehicle.

Note

- We recommend that you also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals if you tow a trailer frequently.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer. ■

Driving Tips

Particular caution is required when towing a trailer.

- Do not, as far as possible, drive with your vehicle unladen and the trailer laden.
- Do not make full use of the legal maximum speeds. This applies in particular to downhill sections.
- Apply the brakes in good time.
- Keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if the outside temperature is high.

Distribution of weight

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Driving speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h for safety reasons. This also applies for countries in which higher speeds are allowed.

The fact that the driving stability of the vehicle + trailer combination reduces with increasing speed means that the legally allowed speed should not be used when there are unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions, particularly near accident black spots.

You must always reduce your speed immediately as soon as you detect even just the **slightest swaying** of the trailer. On no account attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking. Shift down gears in good time before negotiating a downhill section to allow the engine to also act as a brake.

Engine overheating

Please keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if you have to negotiate a lengthy slope in a low gear at a high engine speed when the outside temperature is very high ⇒ page 16.

If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or even the red area of the scale, reduce your speed immediately. Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light in the instrument cluster begins flashing. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ page 166, "Inspecting the coolant level".

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 28, "Coolant temperature/ Coolant quantity ".

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

Any increase in the cooling effect of the coolant fan through shifting down a gear and increasing the engine speed is not possible since the fan speed is independent of the engine speed. One should also not drop a gear for this reason when towing a trailer as long as the engine can manage the slope without any drop in speed. ■

General Maintenance

Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the vehicle

General

Proper care retains the value of your vehicle.

Regular and proper care retains **the value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer. Please follow the instructions for use on the package.

WARNING

- **Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.**
- **Always store care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!**

For the sake of the environment

- Always select environmentally-friendly products when purchasing vehicle care products.
- Do not dispose of residues of care products in domestic waste. ■

Care of the exterior of vehicle

Washing the vehicle

Frequent washing protects your vehicle.

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing and wax treatment. How often you should wash your vehicle depends on a wide range of factors, such as:

- Frequency of use;
- The parking situation (garage, below trees etc.);
- Season of the year;
- Weather conditions;
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It may therefore be necessary, in certain circumstances, to wash the car **once a week**. It may also be sufficient, however, to wash the car **once a month** followed by appropriate wax treatment.

It is essential to also thoroughly wash the **underside of your vehicle** at the end of the winter road salting and gritting period.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident! ■

Automatic vehicle wash systems

The paintwork of the vehicle is sufficiently resistant that the vehicle can be washed normally in automatic vehicle wash plants without any problem. The actual stress to which the paintwork is subjected, however, depends primarily on the design of the vehicle wash system, the filtering of the water and the type of washing and care products used. If the paintwork of your vehicle appears mat after being washed or even has scratches, point this out to the operator of the vehicle wash plant. Use a different vehicle wash plant, if necessary. ▶

There are no particular points to note before washing your vehicle in an automatic vehicle wash system other than the usual precautionary measures (closing the windows, unscrewing the aerial, etc.).

If you have any particular attached parts fitted to your car - such as spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial - it is best to first of all consult the operator of the car wash plant.

It is important to degrease the lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers after passing through the automatic vehicle wash system. ■

Washing vehicle by hand

It is important to first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse it off as thoroughly as possible before washing your vehicle by hand.

One should then clean the vehicle using a soft **washing sponge**, **washing glove** or a **washing brush** and only slight pressure. Work from the top to the bottom - beginning with the roof. Only place slight pressure on the vehicle paintwork during cleaning Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Rinse off the vehicle well after giving it a wash and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

- **The ignition should always be switched off when you wash your vehicle - risk of accident!**
- **Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when you are cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts.**

Caution

- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight - risk of paint damage.
- Ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or at the door and panel joints if you spray your vehicle in winter down with a hose - risk of freezing.
- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products - risk of damage to the surface of paintwork.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash your vehicle at washing bays specifically reserved for this purpose. This ensures that no water which may be contaminated by oil flows into the sewage system. It is not even permitted to wash your vehicle in certain areas except at such specific washing bays. ■

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

When you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, it is essential to comply with the instructions for use of the cleaning equipment. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficiently large distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

On no account use **circular spray nozzles** or **so-called dirt cutters**.

WARNING

It is particularly important that you do not clean tyres with circular spray jets. Damage may occur even at a relatively large spraying distance and if sprayed only for a short time.

Caution

The water containing wax must be no hotter than 60°C, otherwise the vehicle can be damaged. ■

Wax treatment

Good wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences and minor mechanical damage.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork. ▶

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly. Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Caution

Never apply wax to the windows. ■

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paintwork of your vehicle has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservers.

You must treat the paintwork with a wax preserver if the polish you use does not contain any preserving elements ⇒ page 152, "Wax treatment".

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

- You must not treat mat painted parts or plastic with polishing products or hard wax.
- Do not polish the paintwork of the vehicle in a dusty environment, otherwise the paintwork can be scratched. ■

Chrome parts

First clean the chrome parts with a damp clotch and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth. If it does not prove to be adequate, use a chrome care product from Škoda original accessories.

Caution

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment, otherwise they can be scratched. ■

Paint damage

Slight damage to paintwork such as scratches, scuffs or traces of chip damage must be treated immediately **before** any corrosion can result. You can of course have this work carried out by a specialist garage.

Specialist garages have a range of matching **touch-up pens** or **spray cans** available in the colour of your vehicle.

The paint number of the original paintwork of your vehicle is indicated on the vehicle data sticker ⇒ page 205.

Any corrosion which has already have formed must be removed thoroughly. Apply a **corrosion protection primer** and then the paint to the affected point. You can of course have this work carried out by a specialist garage. ■

Plastic parts

External plastic parts are cleaned by normal washing. Plastic parts and synthetic leather can also be treated with **special solvent-free plastic cleaning agents** if a damp cloth is not sufficient. Paint care products are not suitable for plastic parts.

Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

Windows

Only use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. You should not move the ice scraper forward and backward but in one direction on the window which you are cleaning in order to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.

You can best remove residues of rubber, oil, grease, wax or silicone by using a special window cleaner or a special silicone remover.

You should also clean the windows regularly from the inside.

Do not use window leathers which you have used to polish the vehicle body to dry off the windows. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Do not affix any stickers over the inside of the rear window to avoid damage to the **heating elements of the rear window heater**.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

- Never remove snow or ice from the glass parts with warm or hot water - risk of formation of cracks in the glass!
- When removing snow or ice from the windows and mirror lenses make sure not to damage the paintwork of the vehicle. ■

The headlight lenses

Please do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products for cleaning the front headlights - risk of damage to the plastic lenses. **Please use** soap and clean warm water.

Caution

Never wipe the headlights dry and do not use any sharp objects for cleaning the plastic lenses, this may result in damage to the protective paintwork and consequently in formation of cracks on the headlight lenses, e.g through effect of chemical products. ■

Door and window seals

The rubber seals on the doors, boot lid, bonnet and windows remain supple and last longer if you treat them from time to time with a rubber care product (e.g. with a spray with silicone-free oil). You also avoid premature wear of the seals and prevent leakages in this way. It is also easier to open the doors. Rubber seals which are well cared for also do not stick together in cold winter weather. ■

Locking cylinder

We recommend that you use the spray from Škoda original accessories with regreasing and anticorrosive effect for de-icing locking cylinders.

Note

When washing your vehicle, ensure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders. ■

Wheels

Steel wheels

You should also thoroughly wash the wheels and wheel trims when giving your vehicle its regular wash. This prevents any brake dust, dirt and road salt from sticking to the wheel hubs. You can remove stubborn brake abrasion adhering to the wheels with an industrial cleaner. Touch up any damage to the paintwork on the wheels before rust is able to form.

Light alloy wheels

Regular care of light alloy wheels is necessary in order to retain their decorative appearance over long periods. It is particularly important to remove any road salt and brake abrasion from light alloy wheels every two weeks, otherwise the surface will suffer. Wash thoroughly and then treat the wheels with a protective product for light alloy wheels which does not contain any acidic components. You should provide the wheel hubs with a hard wax layer every three months. You must not use any products which cause abrasion when treating the wheel hubs. Any damage to the paint layer on the wheel hubs must be touched up immediately.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

WARNING

One should remember when cleaning the wheels that moisture, ice and road salt may adversely affect braking efficiency – risk of an accident!

Note

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt. ■

Underbody protection

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

One cannot, however, completely rule out damage to the **protective layer** when driving so we recommend that you inspect the protective layer on the underside of your vehicle and on the chassis at certain intervals - this is best done at the beginning and end of the winter - and to touch up any damaged areas.

Specialist garages have suitable **spray products** available as well as the necessary equipment and are familiar with the instructions for use. Therefore, we recommend you have such touch-up work or additional corrosion protection measures carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filter or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire! ■

Protection of hollow spaces

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated. Please remove any small amount of wax which flows out of the cavities at high temperatures with a plastic scraper and clean the spot using petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety and environmental protection regulations should observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax - a risk of fire! ■

Engine compartment

Good corrosion protection is very important, particularly in winter when one often drives over its salt-strewn roads. One should therefore clean the entire engine compartment before and after the salt spreading period, in order to prevent the salt from being destructive.

Specialist garages have the cleaning agents recommended by the manufacturer and also the required equipment.

WARNING

- **It is necessary to observe the guidelines given in the chapter before working on the engine compartment** ⇒ **page 162.**
- **Let the engine cool down before cleaning the engine compartment.**

Caution

- Engine cleaning may be only be undertaken when the ignition is off.
- It is recommended to cover the generator before washing the engine compartment.

For the sake of the environment

The dirty water produced by washing the engine has washed away petrol, and residues of grease and oil and should therefore be cleaned by an oil separator. This is why engine washing should only be undertaken in garages or at filling stations (when these are fitted with the required equipment). ■

Care of the interior of vehicle

Plastic parts, artificial leather and cloths

You can clean plastic parts and artificial leather with a moist cloth. You should only treat such parts with special **solvent-free plastic cleaning and care products** it does prove to be adequate. ▶

Upholstery cloth and cloth trim on the doors, luggage compartment cover, headliner etc. are best treated with special cleaning products, using if necessary a **dry foam** and a soft sponge or brush.

We recommend using a cleaning product from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

Fabric covers of electrically heated seats

Do **not clean** the seat covers moist as this may result in damage to the seat heating system.

Clean such covers using special agents, for example dry foam. ■

Natural leather

Natural leather requires quite particular care and attention.

Leather should be treated from time to time according the following guidelines depending on how much it is used.

Normal cleaning

- Clean soiled areas of the leather with slightly moistened cotton or woollen cloth.

Severe soiling

- Clean severely soiled areas with a cloth dipped in a mild soapy solution (2 spoonfuls of natural soap to 1 litre of water).
- Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams.
- Dry off the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

Removing stains

- Remove fresh stains which are **water-based** (e.g. coffee, tea, juices, blood etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household paper or use the cleaner from the care set for a stain which has already dried in.
- Remove fresh stains on a **fat base** (e.g. butter, mayonnaise, chocolate etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household cleaning paper or with the cleaner from the care set if the stain has not yet penetrated into the surface.
- Use a grease dissolver for **grease stains which have dried in**.
- Eliminate **special stains** (e.g. ball-point pens, felt pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.) with a special stain remover suitable for leather.

Leather care

- Treat the leather every six months with the leather care product available from specialist garages.
- Apply only a small amount of the care product.
- Dry the leather off with a soft cloth

We recommend that you consult a specialist garage if you have any questions regarding cleaning and care of the leather interior in your vehicle.

Caution

- You must on no account treat the leather with solvents (e.g. gasoline, turpentine), floor wax, shoe cream or such like.
- Avoid leaving your vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight in order to avoid bleaching the leather. If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from the direct rays of the sun by covering it over.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface.

Note

- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect regularly and each time after cleaning the leather. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection. ▶

- Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months, remove fresh soiling each time this occurs.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc., as quickly as possible.
- Care also for the leather dye. Refreshen areas which have lost their colour with a special coloured leather cream as required.
- The leather is a natural material with specific properties. During the use of the vehicle, minor optical changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers). ■

Seat belts

– Keep the seat belts clean!

– Wash seat belts which have become soiled using a mild soapy solution.

– Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition.

Belt webbing which has become severely soiled may prevent the inertia reel from reeling up the belt properly.

WARNING

- **The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.**
- **Never clean the seat belts chemically as dry cleaning may destroy the fabric. The seat belts must also not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).**
- **Seat belts which have damage to the webbing, the connections, the inertia reel or the lock should be replaced by a specialist garage.**
- **Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being reeled up.** ■

Fuel

Petrol

Grades of petrol

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol**, which complies with the standard **EN 228**. The individual grades of petrol are distinguished by their octane number (RON). On the inside of the fuel filler flap, you will find the information regarding the RON required by your engine ⇒ page 159.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 95/91 RON

Use unleaded petrol **95** RON. You can also use unleaded petrol **91** RON, but this leads to a slight loss in performance.

If, in case of necessity, the vehicle must be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, you must continue driving at medium engine speeds and low engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel as soon as possible with petrol of the prescribed octane number.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded petrol **95** RON.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol **91 RON** if petrol **95 RON** is not available. You must continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel as soon as possible with petrol of the prescribed octane number.

Even in case of necessity, you must not use petrol of a lower octane number than **91**, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

You can find further information on refuelling ⇒ page 159, “Refuelling”.

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number

You can make unlimited use of unleaded petrol which has a higher octane number than the one prescribed.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** does not result in a power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

Caution

- All Škoda vehicles with petrol engines are equipped with a catalytic converter and must be only driven with unleaded petrol. Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed!
- Only use unleaded petrol which complies with the standard **EN 228**.
- If you use petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the engine can be severely damaged!

Note

The handling, performance and life of your engine are determined to a significant extent by the quality of the fuel. Do not use any petrol additives. ■

Diesel

Diesel fuel

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria).

Fuel additives

You must not use fuel additives, so-called “flow improvers” (petrol and similar products) in diesel fuel.

If the quality of the diesel fuel is poor, it is then necessary to drain the **fuel filter** more often than stated in the Service schedule. ▶

You can find information on refuelling ⇒ page 159, “Refuelling”.

Caution

- Therefore, your vehicle can only be operated with diesel fuel which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria). Filling the tank even only once with diesel fuel which does not comply with the standard, can result in damage to the engine parts, the lubrication system, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If by mistake you have refuelled with a different fuel other than the diesel fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol), on no account start the engine! This can result in severe engine damage! Contact a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can result in engine problems.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can lead to damage to the engine or the fuel system. ■

Operation in winter

Winter-grade diesel fuel

A different grade of diesel fuel is available at filling stations in winter than during the summer. Using “summer-grade diesel fuel” at temperatures below 0°C can result in operational problems because the diesel becomes viscous as a result of paraffin separation.

It is therefore the case that the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria) is the diesel fuel class prescribed for certain periods of the year which can also be purchased at the corresponding time during the year. “Winter-grade diesel fuel” will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20°C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The authorised Škoda Service Partners and filling stations in the country concerned will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Prewarming fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter prewarming system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25°C.

Caution

It is not permitted to add the various fuel additives on the market, including petrol, to diesel fuel in order to improve its flow properties. ■

Refuelling

Fig. 133 Right rear side of the vehicle: Fuel filler flap / fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

Opening the fuel filler cap

- Open the fuel filler flap with the hand.
- Unlock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube to the left using the vehicle key.
- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 133 on the right.

Closing fuel filler cap

- Screw on the cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to lock.
- Lock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube by turning the vehicle key to the right and withdraw the key.
- Press the fuel tank flap closed. ▶

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Further information on fuel ⇒ page 158.

WARNING

Pay attention to any legal requirements if you do carry a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. The canister can be damaged in the event of an accident and fuel may leak out.

Caution

- Remove any fuel which has spilled onto the paintwork of your vehicle immediately - risk of paint damage!
- On vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter, never let the fuel tank run completely empty. An irregular supply of fuel to the engine can result in misfiring and unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system, which may result in overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.
- Make sure that the valve is not pressed into the filler tube when inserting the pump nozzle into the filler tube. Otherwise you are unintentionally filling up the volume, which in case of heat can cause an expansion of the fuel. This can lead to an overflow of fuel or damage to parts of the fuel reservoir.
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refuelling - otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **55 litres**, containing a reserve of **7 litres**. ■

Inspecting and replenishing

Engine compartment

Bonnet remote release

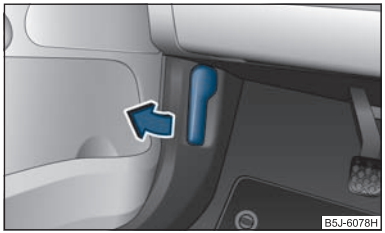


Fig. 134 Bonnet release lever

Bonnet remote release

- Pull the unlocking lever on the left below the dash panel ⇒ fig. 134.

The bonnet jumps out of its lock as a result of the spring force. ■

Opening and closing the bonnet.

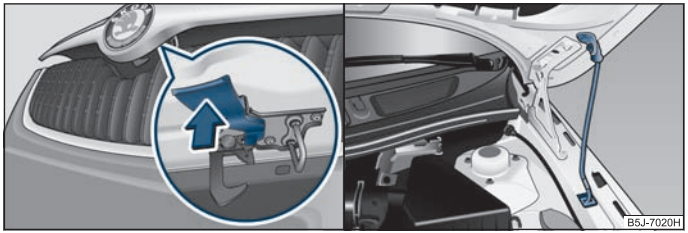


Fig. 135 Radiator grille: Locking lever / securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

Opening the bonnet

- Unlock the bonnet ⇒ fig. 134.
- Ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen **before opening** the bonnet otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.
- Pull on the locking lever ⇒ fig. 135, the bonnet is then unlocked.
- Grip the bonnet and lift it up.
- Take the bonnet support out of its holder and set it in the opening designed for it ⇒ fig. 135 on the right.

Closing the bonnet

- Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Press the bonnet support into the holder designed to hold it.
- Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of about 30 cm into the lock - bonnet **do not press down on it**!

WARNING

- **Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment - risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.**
- **For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. One should therefore check that the lock has in fact engaged properly after closing the bonnet.**
- **Stop your vehicle immediately while driving if you notice that the lock is not properly engaged and close the bonnet properly - risk of an accident!**

Caution

- Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the paintwork. ■

Working in the engine compartment

Particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment!

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.**
- **Switch off the engine and pull out the ignition key.**
- **Apply the handbrake firmly.**
- **If your vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if it is fitted with automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position P.**
- **Allow the engine to cool down.**
- **Keep children clear of the engine compartment.**
- **Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!**
- **Never spill oil and other fluids over the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the anti-freeze contained in the wash liquid) may ignite!**
- **Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the battery.**
- **Never place your hand into the radiator fan as long as the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!**
- **Never open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle as long as the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!**
- **Cover over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir with a large cloth when opening it as protection for your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Do not let objects, such as e.g cleaning cloth or tools lie in the engine compartment.**
- **If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!**
- **In cases where it be necessary to carry out inspection work when the engine is running there is an additional risk from rotating parts (e.g. the V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system. Please observe in addition the following:**
  - **Never touch the electrical cables of the ignition system.**
  - **Absolutely avoid any jewellery, loose items of clothing or long hair from getting into the rotating parts of the engine – Hazard! Therefore remove any jewellery beforehand, tie up your hair and wear tight fitting clothing.**
- **Please also comply with the warning instructions stated below when carrying out any essential work on the fuel system or on the electrical system:**
  - **Always separate the car battery from the electrical system.**
  - **Do not smoke.**
  - **Never carry out any work close to naked flames.**
  - **Always keep a working fire extinguisher at hand.**

Caution

When replenishing fluids in the engine, always ensure that the fluids are on no account mixed up. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage! ■

Overview of the engine compartment

The main inspection points.

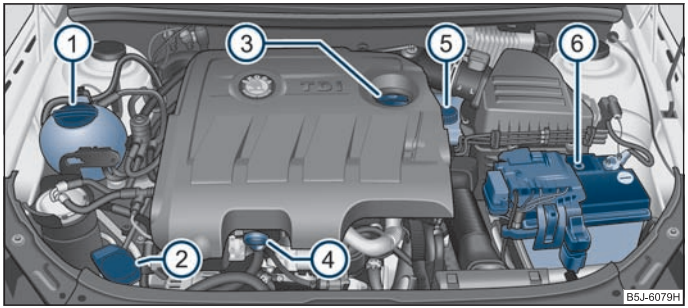


Fig. 136 Diesel engine 1.6 ltr./77 kW

1 Coolant expansion bottle 166
2 Windshield washer fluid reservoir 172
3 Engine oil filler opening 164
4 Engine oil dipstick 163
5 Brake fluid reservoir 167
6 Battery (below a cover) 168

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical. ■

Engine oil

Check engine oil level

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine.

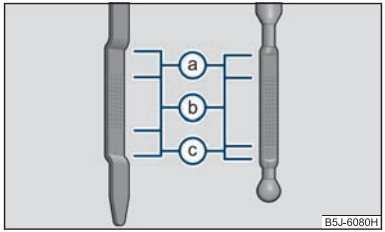


Fig. 137 Dipstick

Checking the oil level

- Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.
- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on page 162.
- Wait a few minutes and pull out the oil dipstick ⇒ ⓘ.
- Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again fully.
- Then withdraw the dipstick again and read off the oil level.

Oil level within range ⓐ

- You must **not** top up the oil.

Oil level within range ⓑ

- You **may** top up the oil. It is possible that the oil level may then be within range ⓐ after doing this. The optimum lies in the middle of the range ⓑ. ▶

Oil level within range (c)

– You **must** top up the oil. It is sufficient, once this is done, to keep the oil level within range (b).

It is normal for the engine to consume oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. The oil consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time after the fuel tank is filled or after driving for long stretches.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range (b) if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass, **but not above this**.

The warning light in the instrument cluster* will indicate ⇒ page 28 whether the oil level is too low. In this case, check the oil level as soon as possible. Top up with an appropriate quantity of oil.

WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

Caution

- The oil level must on no account extend beyond the range (a). Danger of damaging the catalytic converter.
- **Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Switch the engine off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage. ■

Replenishing engine oil

– Inspect the oil level ⇒ page 163.

– Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening.

– Wipe off the oil from the sealing surface of the cover and on the counterpart using a clean cloth.

– Pour in a suitable grade of oil in portions of 0.5 litres ⇒ page 208.

– Inspect the oil level ⇒ page 163.

– Carefully screw on the cap of the filler opening and push the dipstick in fully.

WARNING

- **Avoid dripping oil onto hot parts of the engine when topping up will oil – a risk of fire!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must on no account be above the range (a) ⇒ page 163. Oil will otherwise be drawn in through the crankcase ventilation and may pass through the exhaust system to atmosphere. The oil may combust in the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator ⇒ page 17.

WARNING

- **Only carry out the engine oil change, if you have the required professional knowledge!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**
- **First of all, let the engine cool down, wear an eye protection and gloves – risk of caustic burns due to hot oil.**

Caution

You must not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of engine damage! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- You must on no account pour oil into the ground or into the sewage system.
- In view of the problems involved in properly disposing of old oil, the necessary special tools and the knowledge required for such work, we recommend that you have the oil and oil filter change carried out by an authorised Škoda Service Partner.

Note

After your skin has come in contact with the oil, you must thoroughly wash your skin. ■

Cooling system

Coolant

The job of the coolant is to cool the engine.

The cooling system does not require any maintenance under normal operating conditions. The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive of 40 %. This mixture not only provides antifreeze protection down to -25°C but also protects the cooling and heating system from corrosion. It also prevents the formation of scale and significantly increases the boiling point of the coolant.

You must therefore not reduce the concentration of antifreeze agent in the coolant by adding water, also not during the summer months or in countries with a warm climate. **The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must be at least 40%.**

You can increase the amount of antifreeze in the coolant if a higher concentration of antifreeze is necessary for climatic reasons but only up to 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40°C). The antifreeze protection tails off above that concentration.

Vehicles exported to countries with a cold climate (e.g. Sweden, Norway, Finland) are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35°C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

Coolant

The cooling system is factory-filled with coolant (purple in colour), which complies with the specification TL-VW 774 G.

We recommend that you use the antifreeze agent G13 (purple in colour).

We recommend that you contact a specialist garage if you have any questions regarding the coolant or if you wish to fill up with a different coolant.

A specialist garage can also supply you with the correct coolant additives.

Coolant capacity

Petrol engines	Content
1.2 ltr./51 kW - EU5 / EU2 DDK	5,5
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI - EU5	7,7
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI - EU5	7,7

Diesel engines	Content
1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5	8,4
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5	8,4

Caution

- **Other coolant additives may cause operational problems which, in particular, involves significantly reducing the anticorrosion effect.**
- **Any faults or problems resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and, as a consequence of this, result in major engine damage.** ■

Inspecting the coolant level

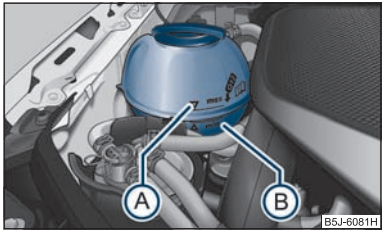


Fig. 138 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion bottle

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment on the right.

- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on page 162.
- Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ fig. 138. The coolant level when the engine is cold must lie between the "MIN" (B) and "MAX" (A) markings. The level may also rise slightly above the "MAX" marking when the engine is warm.

If the coolant level in the reservoir is too low, this is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 28. We nevertheless recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. You should not merely top up the coolant in the reservoir. It is also important to have the cooling system inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

Losses can only occur through the pressure relief in the cap of the coolant expansion bottle which is completely free of leaks if the coolant boils as a result of overheating and is forced out of the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

Caution

One should contact a specialist garage as soon as possible if the source of overheating itself cannot be determined and removed, since there may be grave damage to the engine. ■

Replenishing the coolant

- Switch the engine off.
- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir ⇒ fig. 138 and unscrew the cap **carefully** by turning it to the left ⇒ ⚠.
- Top up the coolant.
- Screw the cap tight until it is heard to lock.

The coolant which you use for replenishing the system, must comply with one specific specification ⇒ page 165, "Coolant". Do not use an alternative additive if the coolant additive G12 PLUS - PLUS is not available in exceptional cases. Just top up the system with water and as soon as possible arrange adjustment to correct the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive again by a specialist garage.

Only use fresh coolant for topping up the system.

Do not fill up over the "MAX" marking! Excess coolant which is heated up is forced out of the cooling system through the pressure relief valve in the cap of the coolant compensation bottle.

Wait until the engine has cooled down for a system which has suffered a major loss of coolant before pouring in coolant. This is necessary to avoid engine damage.

⚠ WARNING

- **The cooling system is pressurized! Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle if the engine is still hot - risk of scalding!**
- **The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health. Avoid contact with the coolant. Coolant vapours are also harmful to the health. It is important, therefore, to always safely store any coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children - risk of poisoning!**

WARNING (continued)

- **If any splashes of coolant get into your eyes, rinse out your eyes immediately with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.**
- **You should also consult a doctor without delay if you have inadvertently swallowed coolant.**

Caution

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. Switch the engine off and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not re-use coolant if it is necessary to drain the coolant in the system. It should be collected and disposed of in compliance with environmental protection regulations. ■

Radiator fan

The radiator fan may switch on suddenly.

The radiator fan is driven by an electric motor and controlled by a thermostat according to the coolant temperature.

The radiator fan may continue running for up to 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off - even if the ignition is also off. It may also switch on suddenly after a certain time, if

- the coolant temperature has risen because of an accumulation of heat or
- the warm engine compartment is heated up additionally by strong sunlight.

WARNING

You must therefore be aware when working in the engine compartment that the fan may switch on suddenly – risk of injury! ■

Brake fluid

Inspecting the brake fluid level

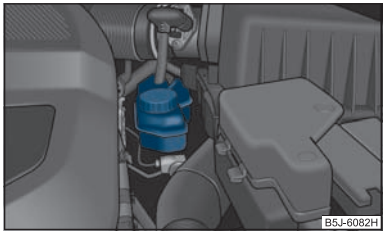


Fig. 139 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

The brake fluid reservoir is located on the left of the engine compartment. The brake fluid reservoir on right-hand steering models is positioned on the other side of the engine compartment.

- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ ⚠ in "Working in the engine compartment" on page 162.
- Inspect the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ fig. 139. The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads, and is perfectly normal.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking. If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light (!) lighting up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 31. In this case **stop immediately and do not drive any further! Obtain professional assistance.**

WARNING

- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance.** ■

Replacing brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. This causes the fluid to absorb moisture from the surrounding air over a period of time. Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system. The water content also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. **This is why brake fluid must be replaced every two years.**

One may only use new brake fluid approved by Škoda Auto. The brake fluid must comply with one of the following standards or specifications:

- VW 501 14,
- FMVSS 116 DOT4,
- DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4.

We recommend that you have the brake fluid replaced by an **authorised Škoda Service Partner** as part of an Inspection Service.

WARNING

- **Using old brake fluid can result in severe stress on the brakes because of the formation of vapour bubbles in the brake system. This greatly impairs the braking efficiency and thus also the safety of your vehicle.**
- **Brake fluid is toxic! It must therefore be kept safely in closed original containers and well away from children and unauthorized persons.**

Caution

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

In view of the problems involved with proper disposal of brake fluid, the special tools and the professional knowledge required, we recommend you have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Battery

Working on the battery

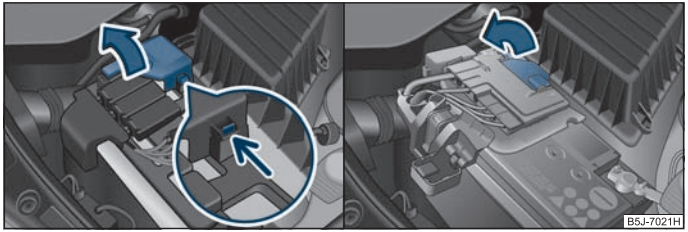


Fig. 140 The battery: Pull up the cover (automatic gearbox) / (manual gearbox)

The battery is located in the engine compartment below a plastic box.

– Unlock the interlock on the positive terminal side of the battery ⇒ fig. 140.

– Pull up the cover in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 140 (automatic gearbox) or ⇒ fig. 140 (manual gearbox).

– The installation of the battery cover on the positive terminal side takes place in the reverse order.

Removal and installation of the battery is not recommended since it can, under certain circumstances, lead to major damage to the battery and fuse boxes. Contact a specialist garage.

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and burns when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions ⇒ ⚠ stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety.

WARNING

- **The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care. Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling batteries. Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs. Battery** ▶

WARNING (continued)

acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, slin cracks). Acids coming into contact with water are diluted accompanied by significant development of heat.

- **Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect the eyes with safety glasses or a shield! There is the danger of suffering blindness! If any battery electrolyte gets into your eye, rinse out your eye immediately with clear water for several minutes. Contact a doctor without delay.**
- **Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. Contact a doctor immediately if you swallow battery electrolyte.**
- **Keep batteries out of the reach of children.**
- **Hydrogen is released when you charge a battery and a highly explosive gas mixture is produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.**
- **Bridging of the poles will create a short circuit (e.g. through metal objects, cables). Possible consequences of a short circuit: Melting of lead struts, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.**
- **It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light, to smoke or to carry out any activities which produce sparks. Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.**
- **Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition as well as all electrical components and disconnect the negative cable (-) on the battery. If you wish to replace a bulb it is sufficient to switch off the appropriate light.**
- **Never charge a frozen or thawed battery - risk of explosion and caustic burns! Replace a frozen battery.**
- **Never use a battery which is damaged - risk of explosion! Immediately replace a damaged battery.**

Caution

- You must only disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle may be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system of the vehicle, first disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery. Then disconnect the positive terminal (+).
- When reconnecting the battery, first connect the positive terminal (+) and only then the negative terminal (-) of the battery. You must on no account connect the cables wrongly - risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the vehicle body otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

For the sake of the environment

A removed battery is a special type of waste which is harmful to the environment - contact your specialist garage regarding disposing of the battery.

Note

- Please also refer to the guidelines ⇒ page 171, “Disconnecting and reconnecting the battery”, also after connecting the battery. ■

Battery with a two-tone indicator

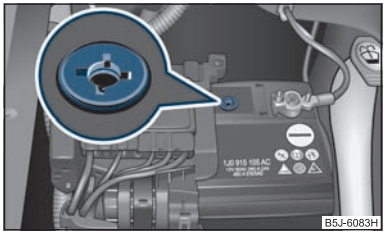


Fig. 141 The battery: Show

An indicator for the electrolyte level, the so-called magic eye ⇒ fig. 141, is located on the top of the battery. The indicator changes its colour in line with the electrolyte level in the battery.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Batteries, which are more than 5 years old, must be replaced. We recommend you have the battery checked or replaced by a specialist garage.

Caution

If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge because certain electrical components consume electricity (e.g. control units) also in idle state. You can prevent the discharging of the battery by disconnecting the negative terminal or charging the battery constantly with a very low charging current. Please also refer to the notes when working on the battery ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on page 168.

Note

- Batteries with two-tone indicator, which are mounted as of factory, are marked with a code which always begins with **5K0**. The exact marking can be e.g. **5K0 915 105 D**.
- Replacement batteries with two-tone indicator, which were obtained from Škoda original accessories, are marked with the code **000 915 105 Dx**, whereby "x" stands for a variable. The exact marking can be e.g. **000 915 105 DB**. ■

Battery with a three-tone indicator

An indicator for the electrolyte level and the charge state, the so-called magic eye ⇒ page 169, fig. 141, is located on the top of the battery. The indicator changes its colour in line with the charge state of and the electrolyte level in the battery.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Green colour - the battery is adequately charged.
- Dark colour - the battery has to be charged
- Colourless or yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Batteries, which are more than 5 years old, must be replaced. We recommend you have the battery checked or replaced by a specialist garage.

Caution

If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge because certain electrical components consume electricity (e.g. control units) also in idle state. You can prevent the discharging of the battery by disconnecting the negative terminal or charging the battery constantly with a very low charging current. Please also refer to the notes when working on the battery ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on page 168.

Note

- Batteries with three-tone indicator, which are mounted as of factory, are marked with a code which always begins with **1J0**, **7N0** or **3B0**. The exact marking can be e.g. **1J0 915 105 AC**.
- Replacement batteries with three-tone indicator, which were obtained from Škoda original accessories, are marked with the code **000 915 105 Ax**, whereby "x" stands for a variable. The exact marking can be e.g. **000 915 105 AB**. ■

Inspecting the electrolyte level

The battery is practically **maintenance-free** under normal operating conditions. We do, however, recommend that you have the electrolyte level inspected from time to time by a specialist garage when outside temperatures are high or when driving on long trips. You should also have the electrolyte level ⇒ page 171 checked each time the battery is charged.

The electrolyte level of the battery will also be checked as part of the Inspection Service. ■

Operation in winter

The battery has to provide greater amounts of electricity during the winter. It also has only part of the initial power output at low temperatures that it has at normal temperatures.

A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0°C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked by a specialist garage before the start of the winter, and recharged if necessary. ■

Charging the battery

A properly charged battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Read the warning notes ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on page 168 and ⇒ ⚠.
- Switch the ignition and all electrical components off.
- Only for "quick-charging": Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Carefully attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- You can now plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the charger.
- When charging is completed: switch the charger off and unplug the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then should you disconnect the terminal clamps of the charger.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not normally necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the battery using low amperages (as for example from a **mini-charger**). Please also refer to the instructions from the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 of the total battery capacity (or lower) is that which should be used until full charging is achieved.

It is, however, necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "**quick-charging**".

"Quick-charging" a battery is **dangerous** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on page 168. It requires a special charger and appropriate knowledge. We therefore recommend that you have your battery quick-charged only by your specialist garage.

A discharged battery may already **freeze** at temperatures just below 0°C ⇒ ⚠. We recommend that you no longer use a battery which has thawed out because the casing of the battery may be cracked through the formation of ice and this would allow battery electrolyte to flow out.

The vent plugs of the battery should not be opened for charging.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> **Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns! Replace a frozen battery.** ■

Disconnecting and reconnecting the battery

On disconnecting and reconnecting the battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	⇒ page 44
Enter radio code number	see Radio Operating Instructions
Set hours	⇒ page 18
Data in the multi-functional indicator* are deleted.	⇒ page 18

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems. ■

Replacing the battery

You should only replace a battery with a new battery of the same capacity, voltage (12 V), amperage and of the same size. Specialist garages have a range of suitable batteries available. ▶

We recommend that you only have an old battery disposed of by a specialist garage since it does require special disposal.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with local environmental protection regulations and on no account as domestic waste. ■

Windshield washer system

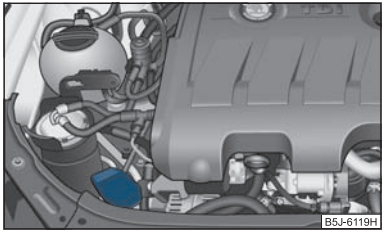


Fig. 142 Engine compartment: Windshield washer fluid reservoir

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlamp cleaning system*. The reservoir is located in the front of the engine compartment on the right side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 142. On some vehicles, the reservoir is located on the left side of the vehicle next to the battery.

The **filling level** of the container is about 3.5 litres and about 5.4 litres on vehicles which have a headlight washing system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We therefore recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from Škoda genuine accessories (in winter additionally with antifreeze) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt. Follow the instructions for use on the packaging when using screen cleaning products.

You should always add antifreeze to the cleaning water in winter even if your vehicle is fitted with heated windscreen washer nozzles*.

It is also possible in exceptional cases to use methylated spirits when no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. Please note, however, that the antifreeze protection at this concentration is only adequate down to -5°C.

WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

Caution

- On no account should you add radiator antifreeze or other additives to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, you should only add cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights to the windscreen washer fluid. Please contact your specialist garage, who will tell you which cleaning agent you can use.

Note

Do not take the filter out of the windscreen wash container when filling it up again with liquid otherwise dirt can get into the liquid transportation system and can lead to faults in operation of the windscreen wash system. ■

Wheels and Tyres

Wheels

General information

- New tyres do not offer optimal grip at first and should therefore be run in for about 500 km at a moderate speed and an appropriately cautious style of driving. You will also profit from longer tyre life.
- The tread depth of new tyres may differ because of design features and the configuration of the tread (depending on the type of tyre and the manufacturer).
- Drive over curbs on the side of the road and other such obstacles slowly and, where possible, at a right angle in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.
- Inspect your tyres from time to time for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges). Remove foreign bodies from the tyre profile.
- Damage to tyres and wheels is frequently not visible. Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. **Please reduce your speed immediately and stop if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.** Inspect the tyres for signs of damage (bulges, splits, etc.). If no visible damage is present, please drive at an appropriately slow speed and carefully to the nearest specialist garage in order to have your vehicle inspected.
- Also protect your tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Immediately replace any dust caps of the valves which have got lost.
- Mark wheels before removing them so that their previous direction of running can be maintained when mounted them again.
- Always store wheels or tyres which been removed in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Unidirectional tyres*

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. This indicates the direction of rotation of the tyre, and it is essential that the tyres are fitted on to run in this direction. Only then are the tyres able to provide the optimal properties in terms of grip, low noise, wear-and-tear and aquaplaning.

Further information concerning the use of unidirectional tyres ⇒ page 177.

WARNING

- **New tyres during the first 500 km do not offer optimal grip and should therefore be run appropriately – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!**

Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

Tyre life

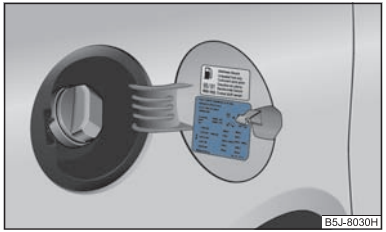


Fig. 143 An opened fuel filler flap with a tyre size and tyre inflation pressure table

The life of your tyres very much depends on the following points:

Tyre pressure

The working life of tyres will be shortened considerably if the tyres are insufficiently or over-inflated and this will have an adverse effect on the handling of your vehicle.

Correctly inflated tyres are of particular importance when travelling at **high speeds**. It is therefore good to check the pressure at least once a month and also before setting off on a long trip. Please do not forget the spare wheel when checking the tyres.

The tyre inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 143. The inflation pressures for **winter tyres** are 20 kPa (0.2 bar) higher than those for summer tyres ⇒ page 177. ▶

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure of tyres when cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres. Adapt the inflation pressure of the tyres accordingly if your vehicle is carrying a significantly higher payload.

Tyre inflation pressure – Tyre size 185/55 R15

The same inflation pressure values apply to tyres of the tyre size 195/55 R15 as to tyres of the tyre size 185/55 R15 which are intended to be used with snow chains, see the inside of the fuel filler flap.

The tyres of the tyre size 185/55 R15, which are intended to be used with snow chains and are fitted on models Roomster Scout, have the following inflation pressure values in kPa.

Engine	Partial load	Full load
1.2/63 kW TSI	220/210	230/320
1,4/63 kW	220/210	
1.2/77 kW TSI	220/210	
1.6/77 kW	220/210	
1,2/55 kW TDI CR	220/220	
1.6/66 kW TDI CR	220/220	
1.6/77 kW TDI CR	220/210	

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking (squealing tyres) increase wear-and-tear on your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when driving which may result in an imbalance and which makes themselves felt through vibration in the steering.

You should have the wheels rebalanced since any imbalance increases wear-and-tear on the steering, the suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted and each time a tyre is repaired.

Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front and rear will not only increase wear-and-tear on the tyres but will also has an adverse effect on vehicle safety. Contact your specialist garage if you notice any unusual tyre wear.

WARNING

- **If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater flexing work. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and even a tyre blowout.**
- **Immediately replace the damaged rims or tyres.**
- **Tyres which are 6 years old or more should only be fitted in exceptional cases and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption. ■

Wear indicators

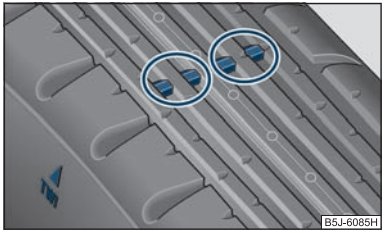


Fig. 144 Tyre tread with wear indicators

The base of the tread of the original tyres has wear indicators 1.6 mm high, installed at right angles to the direction of travel. These wear indicators are located at 6 - 8 points depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre ▶

⇒ fig. 144. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters “TWI”, triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

A remaining tread of just 1.6 mm, measured in the grooves of the tread next to the wear indicators, means that your tyres have reached their legally permissible minimum tread depth.

WARNING

- **You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down. The legally permissible minimum tread depth should be observed.**
- **Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience “aquaplaning” (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – “swimming” on a wet road surface).** ■

Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend changing the front wheels around with the rear wheels. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

It may be advantageous to swap the tyres over “crosswise” when certain types of wear characteristic arise on the running surface of the tyres (but not in the case of unidirectional tyres). Specialist garages are familiar with details.

We recommend that you change the wheels around every 10 000 km in order to achieve even wear on all wheels and to obtain optimal tyre life. ■

New tyres and wheels

Tyres and wheel rims are important design elements. One should therefore use the tyres and wheel rims which have been released for use by Škoda Auto. They are exactly matched to the vehicle type and therefore contribute significantly to good road holding and safe driving characteristics ⇒ ⚠.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type on all 4 wheels, size (rolling circumference) and, if possible, the same tread pattern on one axle.

The specialist garage has access to the most current information about which tyres we have released for use on your vehicle.

We recommend that you have any work relating to tyres or wheels carried out by a **specialist garage**. Your dealer has all of the necessary special tools and replacement parts available plus the required specialist knowledge and is also in a position to properly dispose of the old tyres. A large number of specialist garages also have an attractive range of tyres and wheels available.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents. Approval and licensing may differ according to the legislation prevailing in individual countries.

Proper knowledge of the tyre data makes it easier for you to select the correct type of tyre. Tyres do, for example, have the following **inscription** on their walls:

185 / 65 R 14 86 T

What this means is:

185	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - **R** adial
14	Diameter of wheel in inches
86	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The following **speed restrictions** apply to tyres.

Speed symbol	Permissible maximum speed
Q	160 km/h
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h

Speed symbol	Permissible maximum speed
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h

The **date of manufacture** is also stated on the tyre wall (possibly only on the inside of wheel).

DOT ... 13 10...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 13th week of the year 2010.

Any **spare wheel** which differs from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres) should only be used for a short time in the event of a puncture and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving. It should be replaced as quickly as possible by a normal wheel.

WARNING

- **Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved for your model of Škoda Auto vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident! Approval and licencing of your vehicle on public roads may also become void as a result.**
- **You must on no account drive at a higher speed than is permissible for your tyres – risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your vehicle.**
- **Tyres which are 6 years old or more should only be fitted in exceptional cases and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**
- **Never fit tyres which have already been used without having adequate knowledge of their previous history. Tyres age even if they have not been used at all or only very little. A spare tyre must only be used in exceptional cases and only then when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**
- **Do not, where possible, replace individual tyres but at least replace them on both wheels of a given axle at the same time. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.**

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of in conformity with the appropriate regulations.

Note

It is not normally possible to fit wheels from other models of cars for technical reasons. This may also apply in certain circumstances to the wheels of the same type of vehicle. ■

Wheel bolts

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels – e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres – you must therefore also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

If you retrofit **wheel trims** (or have this done), please also ensure that an adequate flow of air remains assured for cooling the brake system.

The specialist garages are informed about the technical possibilities which exist regarding converting or retrofitting wheels, tyres and wheel trims.

WARNING

- **In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!**
- **The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.**
- **If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can lossen when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rims.**

Caution

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres do not offer the same grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C because of their construction (width, rubber blend, tread pattern). This applies in particular to vehicles which are equipped with **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres** (code index H, V or W on wall of tyre).

Winter tyres must be mounted on all four wheels to obtain the best handling characteristics.

You must only fit those types of winter tyre which are approved for your vehicle. The permissible **sizes of winter tyres** are stated in your vehicle documents. Approvals may differ because of national legislation.

Please remember that the tyres should be inflated to 20 kPa (0.2 bar) more than is the case for summer tyres ⇒ page 173.

Winter tyres no longer offer the same winter performance once the **tyre tread** has worn down to a depth of about 4 mm.

Ageing also causes winter tyres to lose most of their winter performance properties - even in cases where the remaining tread depth is still clearly more than 4 mm.

Speed restrictions apply to winter tyres as well as to summer tyres ⇒ page 175, ⇒ ⚠.

You can fit winter tyres of a lower speed category to your vehicle provided that you also do not drive faster than the permissible maximum speed for such tyres, even if the possible maximum speed of your vehicle is higher. The corresponding tyre category can damage the tyres when exceeding the permissible maximum speed.

Please pay attention to the notes if you decide to fit winter tyres ⇒ page 173.

You can also fit so-called "all-year tyres" instead of winter tyres.

Please contact your specialist garage if there are any points which are not clear who will be able to provide you with information regarding the maximum speed for your tyres.

⚠ WARNING

You must on no account drive your car at more than the permissible maximum speed for your winter tyres - risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your car.

For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres on again in good time since summer tyres offer you better grip and handling on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as ar temperatures below 7 °C - the braking distance is shorter, there is less tyre noise, tyre wear is reduced and fuel consumption is reduced.

Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

Unidirectional tyres*

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**. This indicates the direction of rotation of the tyre, and it is essential that the tyres are fitted on to run in this direction. Only then are the tyres able to provide the optimal properties in terms of grip, low noise, wear-and-tear and aquaplaning.

Should it be necessary to fit on a spare wheel in exceptional cases with a tyre not dedicated to the running direction or in opposite running direction, please adopt a cautious style of driving as the tyre is no longer able to provide optimal grip and handling in such a situation. This particularly important on wet roads. Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 182, "Spare wheel*".

You should have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible and restore the correct direction of rotation on all tyres ■

Snow chains

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations. ▶

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
5J x 14	35 mm	175/70
6J x 14	37 mm	185/65
6J x 15	43 mm	185/55

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **12 mm**.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

Observe the different national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

Please pay attention to the information in the supplied fitting instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

Caution

You must take the chains off as soon as you drive on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Note

- Only fit snow chains from the range of Škoda genuine accessories.
- When driving with snow chains, switch off the traction control system (TCS). ■

Accessories, changes and replacement of parts

Accessories and replacement parts

Škoda vehicles have been built according to the latest discoveries in safety engineering. Thus one should not change the condition in which the vehicle was delivered from the manufacturer without some thought.

The following guidelines should be observed when a vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories, have technical changes made to it or a part has to be replaced at some time in the future.

- Advise should always be obtained from a specialist garage **before** buying any accessories and **before** making any technical changes ⇒ ⚠.
- This is particularly the case when accessories are bought in a foreign country.
- Škoda Genuine Accessories which have been released for use and Škoda original parts can be bought from specialist garages that professionally undertake the assembly of parts which were purchased there.
- Škoda Genuine Accessories which have been released for use and Škoda original parts can be bought from specialist garages that professionally undertake the assembly of parts which were purchased there.
- Radios, aerials and other electrical accessories should only be installed by a specialist garage.
- The guidelines issued by Škoda Auto must be observed when making technical changes.
- This is to ensure that no technical damage occurs to the vehicle, that travelling and operating safety are maintained and that the chnages are permissible. The specialist garages also undertake this work professionally or refer it to another specialist garage in special cases.

Any damage which is done caused by technical changes made without consulting a Skoda dealer is excluded from the guarantee.

⚠ **WARNING**

- **We advise you, in your own interest, to only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda original parts which have been expressly approved for use on your**

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

Škoda. Reliability, safety and suitabiliity have been established for these Škoda original parts.

- **We cannot guarantee suitability of installation into your vehicle of other products despite keeping a constant eye on market developments (also not in the case where there is an attestation or permission can be produced).** ■

Technical changes

Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. This means that the operating safety of your vehicle can be considerably jeopardized, a greater wear of vehicle parts can occur and finally the vehicle registration documents expire.

We trust that you will understand that Škoda Auto cannot be liable for damage resulting from unprofessional work.

We therefore recommend that you have all work carried out with Škoda original parts at specialist garages.

⚠ **WARNING**

Work or modifications on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident! ■

Vehicles of category N1

The vehicle of category N1 is a vehicle which is designed and manufactured for transporting loads with a maximum weight of 3.5 tonnes. ■

Breakdown assistance

Breakdown assistance

First-aid box* and Warning triangle*

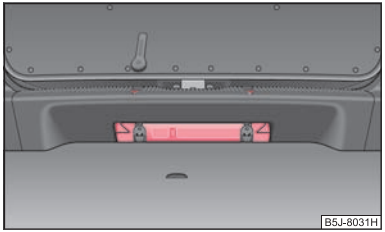


Fig. 145 Placing of the warning triangle

The first-aid box must be stored in such a way that it is immediately ready to hand.

A warning triangle with the maximum dimensions 39 x 68 x 450 mm can be attached to the trim panel of the rear wall with rubber straps ⇒ fig. 145

If you wish to equip your vehicle additionally with a warning triangle, please contact a specialist garage.

WARNING

The first-aid box must be stored in such a way that the occupants do no suffer any injuries in the event of an emergency braking or a collision of the vehicle.

Note

Pay attention to the use-by-date of the contents of the first-aid box. ■

Fire extinguisher*

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person or company annually (please observe the various differing national legal requirements).

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not correctly attached, in case of sudden manoeuvres or an accident it can be "thrown" through the interior compartment and cause injuries.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with the relevant and valid legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is no longer assured.
- The fire extinguisher is only supplied in certain countries within the scope of delivery. ■

Vehicle tool kit

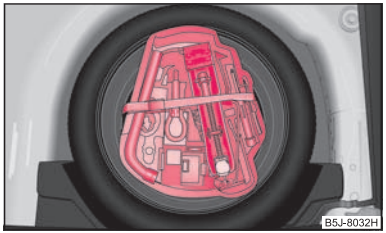


Fig. 146 Luggage compartment: storage compartment for vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack* are stowed in a plastic box in the spare wheel* ⇒ page 181, fig. 146; there is also space here for the detachable ball head of the towing device.

The vehicle tool kit contains the following parts (depending on equipment fitted):

- wheel wrench*;
- wire clamps for removing the full wheel trims;
- towing eye;
- Adapter for the safety wheel bolts*.
- Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- Replacement bulb set
- Screwdriver*

Before placing the lifting jack back in its storage area, screw in the arm of the lifting jack fully.

WARNING

- **The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. On no account attempt to lift a heavier vehicle or other loads - risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely attached in the luggage compartment.** ■

Tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit is intended for the repair of minor tyre defects. The tyre repair kit contains a compressor, inflation bottle, operating instructions and accessories.

The repair with the tyre repair kit is **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre; this repair only serves to reach a workshop. The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately. **Please read the attached instructions carefully before the repair.**

The tyre repair kit is stowed in an inserted foam piece under the luggage compartment cover or in the right part of the luggage compartment. ■

Spare wheel*

The spare wheel is stowed in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment below the floor covering.

Fig. 147 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel

The spare wheel lies in a well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and is fixed in place along with a vehicle tool kit box using a special screw ⇒ fig. 147.

One should check the inflation pressure in the spare wheel (at best when generally checking the tyre air pressures - see sign on the fuel filler flap ⇒ page 159) to ensure that the spare wheel is always ready to use.

Unidirectional tyres*

If you have such tyres on your vehicle, please refer to the notes below:

- The spare wheel provided with a car fitted with unidirectional tyres has different dimensions. The wheel is provided with a warning sticker.
- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h with this spare wheel and pay particular attention while driving. Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The inflation pressure for this spare wheel is identical to the inflation pressure of the standard tyres.
- Use this spare wheel only to reach the nearest specialist garage as it is not intended for continuous use. ■

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

The following steps should be carried out before actually changing the wheel.

- If it is necessary to change a wheel, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the traffic flow. The place you choose should be **level**.
- Have all the occupants **get out**. While changing a wheel, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (e.g. behind a crash barrier).
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Engage **1st gear** or if your vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, position the **selector lever into position P**.
- If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it.
- Take the **vehicle tool kit** and the **spare wheel** ⇒ page 181 out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **If you find yourself in flowing traffic switch on the hazard warning lights system and place the warning triangle on the side of the road at the prescribed distance from your vehicle while observing all national legal provisions. In this way you are protecting not only yourself but also other road users.**
- **Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – danger of suffering injury.**

Caution

If you have to change a wheel on a slope first block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object in order to secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.

Note

Comply with the national legal regulations. ■

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

- Take off the full wheel trim* ⇒ page 184 or the caps ⇒ page 184.
- Slacken the wheel bolts ⇒ page 185.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is clear of the ground ⇒ page 185.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper etc.).
- Take off the wheel.
- Fit on the spare wheel* and tighten the wheel bolts slightly.
- Lower the car.
- Tighten the wheel bolts firmly, alternately and diagonally using the wrench (cross-wise) ⇒ page 185.
- Mount the full wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- You must never grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting on unidirectional tyres, ensure that the tyres rotate in the correct direction ⇒ page 173. ■

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, you must perform the following steps.

- Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
- Stow the replaced wheel in the luggage compartment.
- **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the spare wheel just mounted as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.

– Change the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about possibilities for getting repairs done.

WARNING

It is necessary to observe the guidelines given on ⇒ page 175, "New tyres and wheels" if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different to those it was fitted with at the works.

Note

- If you find, when changing the wheel, that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed to a workshop where the tightening torque can be checked. ■

Full wheel trim*

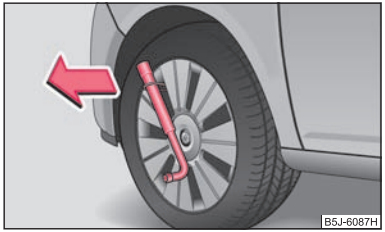


Fig. 148 Removing the full wheel trim

Pulling off

– Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the full wheel trim.

– Push the wheel key through the clamp, support the wheel key on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim ⇒ fig. 148.

Installing

– First press the full wheel trim onto the wheel at the valve opening provided. Then press the full wheel trim into the wheel in such a way that its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

Caution

- Use the pressure of your hand, do not knock on the full wheel trim! Heavy knocks mainly on the points where the full wheel trim has not been inserted into the wheel, can result in damage to the guide and centering elements of the full wheel trim.
- Check for yourself that the safety wheel bolt is located in the hole in the area of the valve before fitting the full wheel trim onto a steel wheel which is attached with a safety wheel bolt ⇒ page 186, "Securing wheels against being stolen*". ■

Wheel bolts with caps*

The caps are designed to protect the wheel bolts.

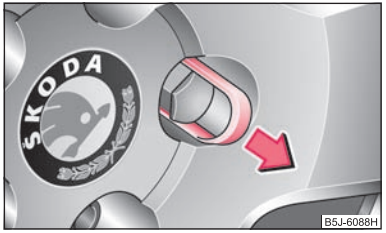


Fig. 149 : Pull off cap from the wheel bolt

Pulling off

– Insert the **plastic clip** (in the car tool kit) sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the clip are positioned at the collar of the cap.

– Pull the cap off with the **plastic clip** ⇒ fig. 149.

Installing

– Insert the caps onto the bolts. ■

Slackening and tightening wheel bolts

Slacken the wheel bolts before jacking up the vehicle.

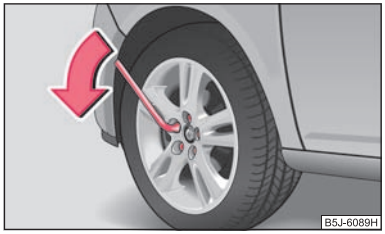


Fig. 150 : Slackening wheel bolts

Slackening wheel bolts

- Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the wheel bolt [14].
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn to the left ⇒ fig. 150.

Tightening wheel bolts

- Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the wheel bolt [14].
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt to the right until it is tight.

WARNING

Slacken the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up – risk of an accident!.

Note

- Apply pressure carefully with your **foot** to the end of the wrench if it proves difficult to slacken the bolts. Hold tight on the vehicle when doing this and ensure that you have a steady position. ■

[14] Use the appropriate adapter for slackening and tightening the safety wheel bolts ⇒ page 186.

Raise vehicle

You have to raise the vehicle with the lifting jack in order to be able to take off the wheel.*

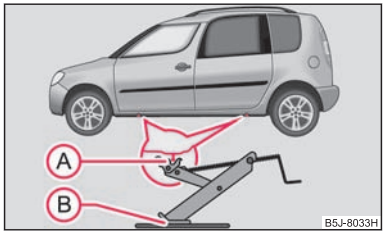


Fig. 151 : Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

- Position the lifting jack by selecting the jacking point - engraving in the lower sill - which is closest to the wheel to be removed ⇒ fig. 151.
- Position the lifting jack below the jacking point and move it up until its claw is positioned directly below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the vertical web on the engraving of the lower sill (A) and the bottom base plate of the lifting jack (B) is resting flat with its complete surface against firm ground.
- Turn the lifting jack up further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

Ground below the lifting jack which is soft and slippery can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, a tiled floor, etc.

WARNING

- **Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed – risk of injury.**
- **Take suitable measures to prevent the base of the lifting jack from slipping off – risk of injury!**
- **Place the lifting jack only on a solid and even surface.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Not positioning the lifting jack at the specified points can result in damage to the vehicle. The jack can also slip off if it does not have sufficient grip – risk of injury!**
- **Never start the engine if the vehicle is lifted – risk of accident.**
- **Never lie under the vehicle if the vehicle is only lifted with the vehicle lifting jack.**
- **It is important to support the vehicle with suitable supporting blocks if you wish to work under the lifted vehicle – risk of injury!** ■

Securing wheels against being stolen*

You need a special adapter for slackening the safety wheel bolts.

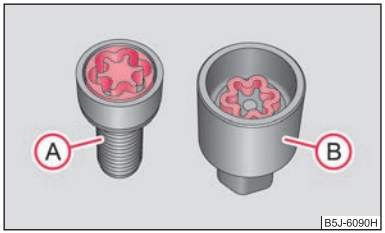


Fig. 152 Safety wheel bolt with adapter

- Pull off the full wheel trim/cap from the wheel hub or cap from the safety wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter (B) with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt (A) right down in such a way that only the outer hexagon is jutting out ⇒ fig. 152.
- Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the adapter (B).
- Slacken the wheel bolt, or tighten it firmly ⇒ page 185.
- Reinstall the full wheel trim/wheel cap after removing the adapter or place the cap onto the safety wheel bolt.
- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.

The safety wheel bolts on vehicles fitted with them (one safety wheel bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tighten up by using the adapter provided.

It is meaningful to note the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the safety wheel bolts. You can purchase a replacement adapter from a specialist garage, if necessary, by quoting this number.

We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Caution

- Damage can occur to the adapter and safety wheel bolt if the safety wheel bolt is tightened up too much.
- On steel wheels, the theft-deterrent wheel bolt must always be installed in the hole, which is close to the valve. Otherwise the full wheel trim cannot be mounted and the full wheel trim can be damaged during the assembly.

Note

The set of safety wheel bolts can be obtained from a specialist garage. ■

Jump-starting

Initial steps

You can use the battery of another vehicle for jump-starting yours if the engine does not start because the battery on your vehicle is flat. You will require jump-start cables for this purpose.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle. ▶

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Please pay attention to the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases black.

WARNING

- **A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0°C. In case of frozen battery carry out no jump-starting – risk of explosion! Also after thawing of the battery there is a risk of caustic burns due to leaking acid. Replace the frozen battery.**
- **Please pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 162.**

Note

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- Switch off any installed telephone and also pay attention to the instructions for use of the telephone in such a situation.
- We recommend that you purchase the jump-starting cable in the specialist shops of the battery manufacturers. ■

Start engine

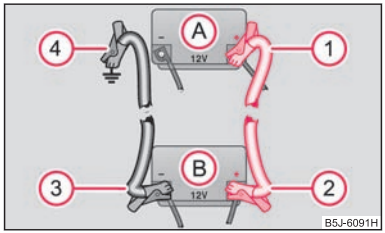


Fig. 153 Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle: A – flat vehicle battery, B – battery providing current

It is important to connect the jump-start cables in the correct order.

Connecting positive terminals

- Attach one end (1) to the positive terminal ⇒ fig. 153 of the discharged battery (A).
- Attach the other end (2) to the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power (B).

Connecting negative terminal and engine block

- Attach one end (3) to the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power (B).
- Attach the other end (4) to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block, or to the engine block itself ⇒ ⚠.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing current and run the engine at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting an engine after 10 seconds if it does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- Disconnect the cables on the engine in exactly the **reverse order** they were connected up.

WARNING

- **The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never make contact with each other. Furthermore, the cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle - risk of a short circuit!**
- **Do not affix the jump starting cables to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.**
- **Do not affix the cable end (4) to parts of the fuel and brake system.**
- **Run the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the batteries - risk of caustic burns!**
- **The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.**
- **Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes etc.) away from the battery - risk of an explosion!**
- **Never jump-start the batteries which have a too low electrolyte level - risk of explosion and caustic burns!** ■

Tow-starting and towing vehicle

General

Please pay attention to the following instructions if you are going to use a tow rope:

Driver of the towing vehicle

- Do not drive off until the tow rope is taught.
- Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch the ignition on so that the steering wheel is not blocked and you can also operate the turn signal lights, the headlight flasher, the windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system.
- Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if your vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- Note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. You will require significantly greater physical force to depress the brake pedal and to steer the vehicle if the engine is not running.
- Ensure that the tow rope is always kept taught.

Tow rope or tow bar

A tow **bar** is safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimizes any shocks. You can use a tow **rope** only if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The tow rope must be elastic to protect the vehicle. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar only to the **towing eyes** provided for this purpose ⇒ page 189, “Front towing eye” and ⇒ page 189, “Rear towing eye”.

Driving style

Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

One should be constantly vigilant not to allow impermissibly high towing forces or jerky loadings. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

Caution

If the gearbox of your vehicle no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed in with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground, or on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.

Note

- Please comply with any national legal provisions particularly regarding the switched on signal systems, when towing in or tow-starting another vehicle.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle. ■

Front towing eye

The towing eye is stored in the box for the vehicle tool kit.

Fig. 154 Front bumper: protective grille / installing the towing eye

- Press on the left half of the cover in direction of arrow (1) ⇒ page 189, fig. 154.
- Pull the cover out of the front bumper.
- Screw in the towing eye anticlockwise down to the stop ⇒ page 189, fig. 154 and tighten up using the wheel wrench (push the wheel wrench through eye).
- In order to reinstall the cover after screwing out the towing eye, insert it in the mounts and then press on the right side of the cover. The cover must engage firmly. ■

Rear towing eye

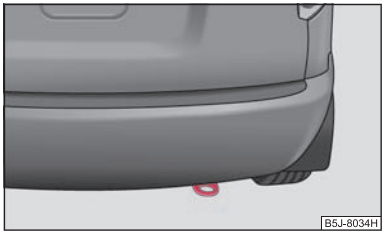


Fig. 155 Rear towing eye

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right ⇒ fig. 155. ■

Tow-starting a vehicle

If the engine does not start, we generally do **not recommend** to tow-start your vehicle. One should attempt to start the engine using jump start cables ⇒ page 186 or call on the services of the SERVICE mobile.

If your vehicle has to be towed:

- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear with the vehicle stationary.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully and keep it depressed.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Wait until both vehicles are moving then release the clutch pedal slowly.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully when the engine fires and take the vehicle out of gear.

⚠ WARNING

There is high risk of having an accident when tow-starting a vehicle, when for example the towed vehicle runs into the towing vehicle.

Caution

Vehicles which are fitted with a catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres. Unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Towing in a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox

Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 188.

The vehicle can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised. The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**. ■

Towing of a vehicle with an automatic gearbox

Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 188.

The car can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope. Refer at the same time to the following guidelines:

- Move **selector lever into N**.
- The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
- The maximum permissible towing distance is **50 km**. The gear oil pump does not operate when the engine is not running; the gearbox would not be adequately lubricated at higher speeds and over longer towing distance.

Caution

If the vehicle is towed in by a recovery vehicle, it should only be towed in with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

Note

The vehicle must be transported on a special vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km. ■

Fuses and light bulbs

Electric fuses

Replacing fuses in the dash panel

Defect fuses must be replaced.

Fig. 156 Bottom side of the dash panel: Fuse cover

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind the safety cover.

- Switch the ignition off and also the electrical component affected.
- Carefully swivel the cover in the direction of arrow and pull it out ⇒ fig. 156.
- Find out which fuse belongs to the component which is not operating ⇒ page 192, "Fuse assignment in the dash panel".
- Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the fuse cover, insert it onto the respective fuse and pull out this fuse.
- Defect fuses can be detected by their melted metal strips. Replace the defect fuse by a new fuse of the **same** ampere number.
- Insert the fuse cover into the dash panel in such a way that the guide lugs are guided into the openings of the dash panel and then lock them by pressing.

We recommend that you always have the small box of replacement fuses in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement fuses from the range of Škoda original parts or from a specialist garage[15].

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
brown	7,5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30

Caution

- Never attempt to "repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time.

Note

We recommend that you have these fuses replaced by a specialist garage. ■

15) The small box with replacement fuses is part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

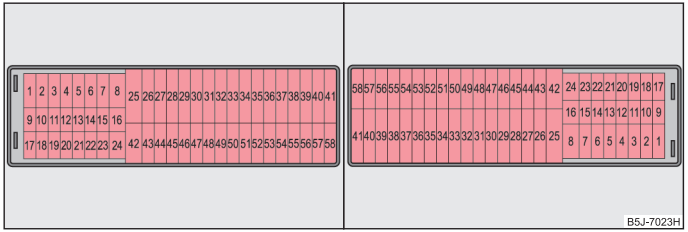


Fig. 157 Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering / right-hand steering

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Not assigned	
2	Start/stop	5
3	Instrument cluster, headlamp beam adjustment	10
4	ABS control unit	5
5	Petrol engine: Cruise control system	5
6	Reversing light (manual gearbox)	10
7	Ignition	15
	Engine control unit, automatic gearbox	7,5
8	Brake pedal switch, coolant fan	5
9	Operating controls for the heating, control unit for air conditioning system, parking aid, control unit for cornering lights, coolant fan	5
10	Not assigned	
11	Mirror adjustment	5
12	Control unit for trailer detection	5
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox	5
14	Motor for halogen projector headlights with cornering light function	10
15	Navigation PDA	5
16	Electrohydraulic power steering	5
17	Radio	10
	Daylight driving lights	7,5
18	Mirror heater	5
19	S-contact	5
20	Engine control unit	5
	Engine control unit	7,5
	Fuel pump relay	15
	Fuel pump control unit	15
21	Reversing light, fog lights with the function “CORNER”	10
22	Operating controls for the heating, control unit for air conditioning system, parking aid, mobile phone, instrument cluster, steering angle sender, ESP, vehicle voltage control unit, multifunction steering wheel	7,5
23	Interior lighting, storage compartment and luggage compartment, side lights	15
24	Central control unit of the vehicle	5
25	Seat heaters	20
26	Rear window wiper	10
27	Not assigned	
28	Petrol engine: AKF valve, petrol engine: Control flap	10
29	Injection, water pump	10

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
30	Fuel pump	15
	Ignition	20
	Cruise control system, operation of PTC relay	5
31	Lambda probe	10
32	High pressure pump, pressure valve	15
33	Engine control unit	30/15
34	Engine control unit	15
	Vacuum pump	20
35	Power supply of ignition lock	5
36	Main beam light	15
37	Rear fog light	7,5
38	Fog lights	10
39	Blower	30
40	Heatable windscreen washing nozzles, windscreen cleaning system	15
41	Not assigned	
42	Rear window heater	25
43	Horn	20
44	Front window wiper	20
45	Central control unit for convenience system	25/10
46	Anti-theft alarm system	15
47	Cigarette lighter, power socket in the luggage compartment [a)]	15
48	ABS	15
49	Turn signal lights, brake lights	15
50	Radio	10
51	Electrical power window (front and rear) - left side	25
52	Electrical power window (front and rear) - right side	25
53	Parking light - left side	5
	Electric sliding/tilting roof	25
54	Anti-theft alarm system	15/5
55	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG	30
56	Headlight cleaning system	25
	Parking light - right side	5
57	Left low beam, headlight range adjustment	15
58	Low beam on the right	15

a) If the engine is switched off already one electrical component which is connected can discharge the battery.

Replacing fuses at the battery (manual gearbox, automatic gearbox DSG)

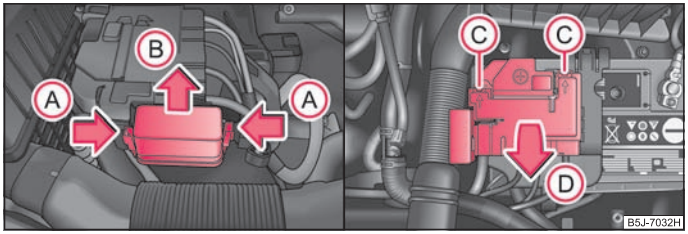


Fig. 158 The battery: Fuse cover

– Press together the interlocks of the fuse cover simultaneously in direction of arrow (A) ⇒ fig. 158 and push out the cover in direction of arrow (B).

- Release the fixtures in the openings (C) using a flat screwdriver and fold the cover upwards in direction of arrow (D).
- Find out which fuse belongs to the component which is not operating.
- Defect fuses can be detected by their melted metal strips. Replace the defect fuse by a new fuse of the **same** ampere number.

Caution

- Never attempt to "repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time.

Note

We recommend that you have these fuses replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Fuse assignment at the battery (manual gearbox, automatic gearbox DSG)

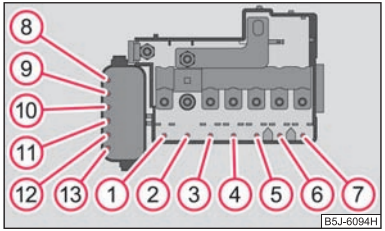


Fig. 159 Schematic representation of fuse assignment at battery

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Dynamo	175
2	Not assigned	
3	Interior	80
4	Electrical auxiliary heating system	60
5	Interior	40
6	Glow plugs, coolant fan	50
7	Electrohydraulic power steering	50
8	ABS or TCS or ESP	25
9	The radiator fan	30
10	The radiator fan	5
11	ABS or TCS or ESP	40
12	Central control unit	5
13	Automatic gearbox electrical auxiliary heating system	5 40

Caution

Observe the following guidelines ⇒ (!) in "Replacing fuses at the battery (manual gearbox, automatic gearbox DSG)" on page 193.

Note

The fuses 1 - 7 can be replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Replace fuses at the battery (automatic gearbox)

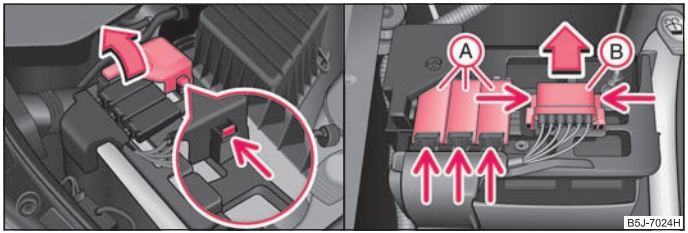


Fig. 160 The battery: Open the positive terminal cover / fuse cover

- Open the positive terminal cover (+) ⇒ fig. 160.
- Press onto the interlocks of the fuse covers (A) ⇒ fig. 160 on the right and open the covers.
- Press together the interlocks of the fuse cover (B) simultaneously and push out the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Find out which fuse belongs to the component which is not operating ⇒ page 194, "Fuse assignment at the battery (manual gearbox, automatic gearbox DSG)".
- Defect fuses can be detected by their melted metal strips. Replace the defect fuse by a new fuse of the **same** ampere number.

Caution

- Never attempt to "repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time.

Note

- We recommend that you have these fuses replaced by a specialist garage.
- Some vehicles are only fitted with the cover (B) ⇒ fig. 160 on the right. ■

Fuse assignment at the battery (automatic gearbox)

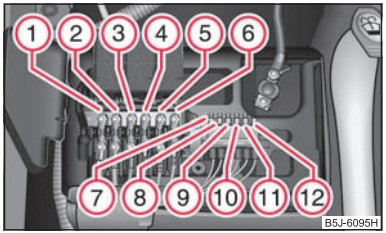


Fig. 161 Schematic representation of fuse assignment at battery

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Dynamo	175
2	Interior	80
3	Electrical auxiliary heating system	60
4	ESP	40
5	Electrohydraulic power steering	50
6	Glow plugs	50
7	ESP	25
8	The radiator fan	30
9	Air conditioning system	5
10	ABS	40
11	Central control unit	5
12	Automatic gearbox electrical auxiliary heating system	5 40

Caution

Observe the following guidelines ⇒ ⓘ in "Replace fuses at the battery (automatic gearbox)". ■

Bulbs

Replacing bulbs

The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, serviette or something similar.

Defect light bulbs should only be replaced with light bulbs of the same type. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

Changing certain bulbs is not something which you can do yourself, but requires to be done by a specialist. Other parts of the vehicle must be removed in order to change the light bulbs. This applies, in particular, to bulbs which can only be reached from the engine compartment.

We therefore recommend that you have any bulbs changed by a specialist garage or, in exceptional cases, by calling on other professional assistance.

Please note that the engine compartment is a hazardous area ⇒ page 162, "Working in the engine compartment".

We recommend that you always have a small box of replacement bulbs in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement bulbs from Škoda original accessories or from a specialist garage[16].

A stowage place for the bulbs is located in the box in the spare wheel.

Bulb – Overview

Front headlight	Halogen headlight	Halogen projector headlights
Low beam light	H4	H7
Main beam light	H4	H7
Parking lights	W5W	
Turn signals	PY21W	
Fog lights*	H8/HB4[a]	
Daylight driving lights*	P21W	

[a] Valid for vehicles Scout.

Rear light unit	Bulb
Reversing light	P21W
Turn signals	PY21W
Brake lights	P21W
Fog lights	P21W
Parking lights	2x W5W

Others	Bulb
Side turn signal lights	WY5W
Licence plate light	C5W / T4W (5W)
3. Brake light	LED
Interior lighting front / rear	C10W
Reading lights	W5W
Luggage compartment light	W5W
Storage compartment light - front passenger side	W5W

[16] The small box with replacement bulbs is part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

WARNING

- **Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb – risk of injury!**
- **It is recommended to wear gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.**

Note

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is assumed that no major complications will arise. Other light bulbs should be replaced by your specialist garage. ■

Front headlight

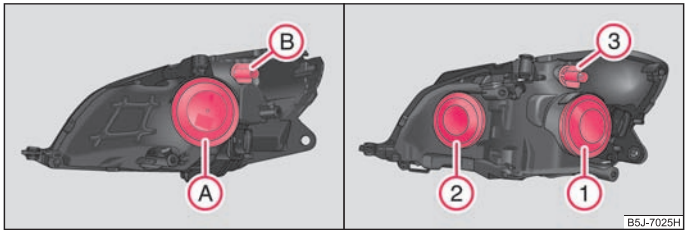


Fig. 162 Fitting position of the bulbs: Halogen headlights / halogen projector headlights

Positions of the light bulbs in the halogen headlights ⇒ fig. 162 on the left and in the halogen projector headlights ⇒ fig. 162 on the right.

(A) – low beam, main beam and side lights

(B) – front turn signal light

(1) – low beam light

(2) – main beam and side lights

(3) – front turn signal light ■

Low beam and main beam (halogen headlights)

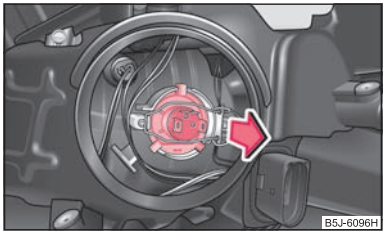


Fig. 163 Removing the light bulb for the low beam and main beam light

- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cap (A) ⇒ fig. 162.
- Pull off the connector from the lamp, release the sprung wire clamp and pull out the lamp towards the rear.
- Replace the lamp H4, insert into the opening in the reflector (with the fixing lugs in the recesses), secure with the sprung wire clamp, mount the connector and position the protective cap.
- We recommend that you have the headlight setting checked by a Skoda Service Partner after replacing the light bulb. ■

Low beam (halogen projector headlights)

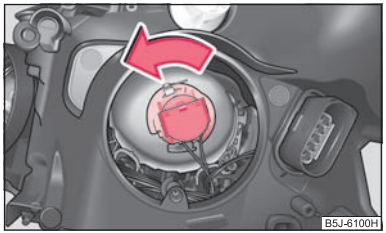


Fig. 164 Removing the light bulb for the low beam light

- Open the bonnet.

- Remove the protective cap (1) ⇒ page 197, fig. 162 on the right.
- Turn the connector with the light bulb up to the stop towards the left and remove.
- Replace the halogen lamp H7, insert the connector with the new halogen lamp and turn to the right up to the stop.
- Insert the protective cap.
- We recommend that you have the headlight setting checked by a Skoda Service Partner after replacing the light bulb. ■

Main beam (halogen projector headlights)

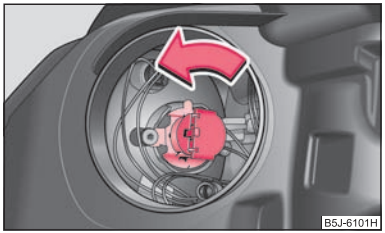


Fig. 165 Removing the light bulb for the main beam light

- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cap (2) ⇒ page 197, fig. 162.
- Turn the connector with the light bulb up to the stop towards the left and remove.
- Replace the halogen lamp H7, insert the connector with the new halogen lamp and turn to the right up to the stop.
- Insert the protective cap.
- We recommend that you have the headlight setting checked by a Skoda Service Partner after replacing the light bulb. ■

Turn signal light (at the front)

- Open the bonnet.
- Turn the socket (B) (halogen headlight) ⇒ page 197, fig. 162 or the socket (3) (halogen projector headlight) to the left and take it out together with the light bulb for the turn signal light.
- Replace the defective light bulb.
- Insert the lamp holder with light bulb into the headlight. Secure the lamp holder by turning it to the right until it locks in place. ■

Parking light at the front

- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cap (A) (halogen headlight) or (2) (halogen projector headlight) ⇒ page 197, fig. 162.
- Grasp the light bulb holder and pull it out of the headlight.
- Replace the light bulb in the light bulb holder and re-insert into the headlight. ■

Daylight driving lights and fog lights

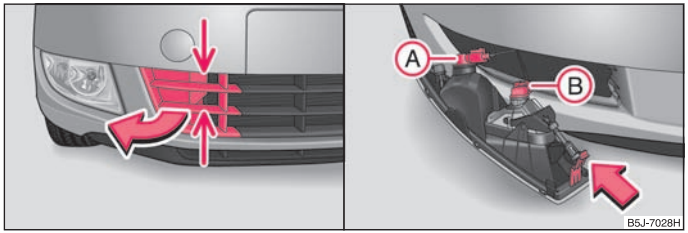


Fig. 166 Front bumper: Protective grille / removing the fog light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Grasp the grille at the points marked with the arrows ⇒ fig. 166 on the left and take it out.
- Guide your hand into the opening in which the grille was located and press the spring bolt ⇒ fig. 166 on the right.

- Take out the fog light.
- Turn the socket (A) with the bulb for daylight driving light or the socket (B) with the bulb of the fog light to the left up to stop and take it out.
- Replace the lamp, insert the connector with the new lamp and turn to the right up to the stop.
- For the installation, first of all insert the fog light with the interlock to the side far away from the marking of the vehicle.
- Press into place the headlight onto the side facing the marking.
- First of all put the grille with the latch in place on the side opposite the marking.
- Press into place the protective grille onto the side facing the marking. ■

Cover of fog lights - Roomster Scout

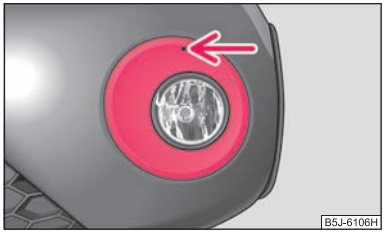


Fig. 167 Front bumper: Roomster Scout

Removing the cover - Roomster Scout

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Guide the wire clamp from the vehicle tool kit into the opening above the fog light ⇒ fig. 167 and remove the cover. ■

Fog lights - Roomster Scout

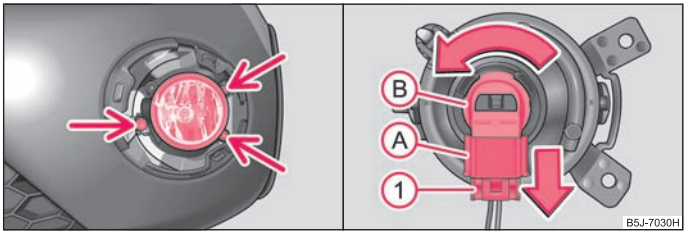


Fig. 168 Front bumper: Fog lights / changing the bulb

Removing the fog light

- Screw out the screws ⇒ fig. 168 with the aid of the screwdriver*, which is part of the vehicle tool kit[17].
- Take out the fog light.

Changing the bulb and installing the fog light

- Press the locking button (1) ⇒ fig. 168 of the plug (A) and remove the plug from the socket (B).
- Turn the socket (B) with the bulb to the left up to the stop and take it out.
- Change the bulb, insert again the socket with the new bulb and turn it to the right up to the stop.
- Connect the plug (A) to the socket (B).
- Screw in the screws again and insert the cover. The cover must engage firmly.

[17] Valid for Roomster Scout.

Licence plate light

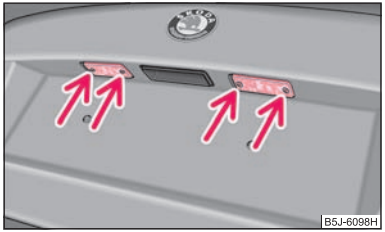


Fig. 169 Remove the licence plate light

- Open the boot lid and unscrew the light glass ⇒ fig. 169.
- Take the defective bulb out of the holder and insert a new one.
- Insert the glass cover of the light again and press it down to the stop - ensure that the sealing rubber is correctly seated.
- Screw on the light glass slightly. ■

Rear light unit

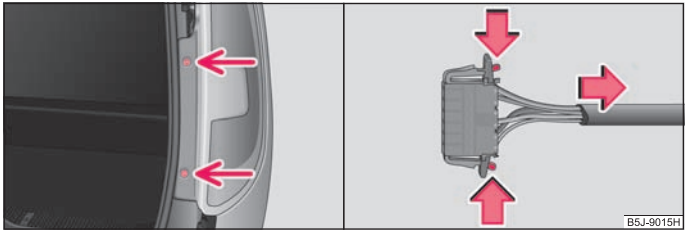


Fig. 170 Removing the rear light unit / disconnecting the plug connection

- Open the boot lid.
- Unscrew the light ⇒ fig. 170.
- Grasp the light at the top and bottom part and pull it slightly to the rear.
- Disconnect the plug connection ⇒ fig. 170 on the right. ■

Changing light bulbs in the rear light unit

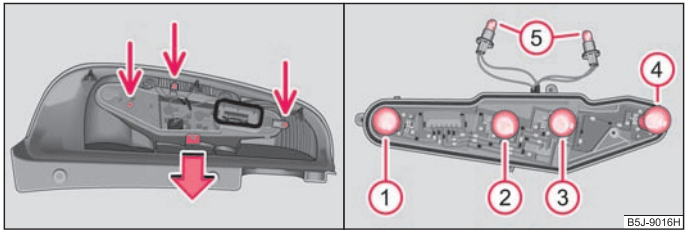


Fig. 171 Remove the middle part of the light / Fitting position of the bulbs

- Unscrew the middle part of the light and slacken the interlock in order to reach the bulbs ⇒ fig. 171.
- Replace the defective light bulb.
- To replace the bulb of the parking light, turn the fixture of the bulb (5) to the left up to the stop (in the direction of the arrows on the housing) and take the fixture out of the housing ⇒ fig. 171 on the right.
- Replace the light bulb, put the bulb connector back into the housing and turn it to the right up to the stop (in the opposite direction of the arrows on the housing).
- Screw the middle part of the light onto the housing ⇒ fig. 171.
- Reconnect the plug connector and insert the bulb in the original position.
- Screw on the light ⇒ fig. 170.

Fitting position of the light bulbs in the rear light unit ⇒ fig. 171 on the right.

(1) - Brake lights

(2) - Turn signal lights

(3) - Reversing light

(4) - Rear fog light

(5) - Parking lights ■

Luggage compartment light

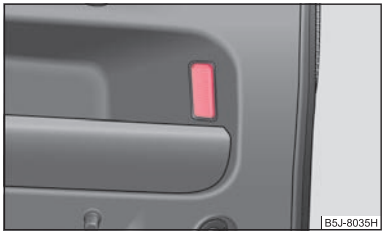


Fig. 172 Remove the luggage compartment light

- Open the boot lid.
- Insert a screwdriver into the slot below the light ⇒ fig. 172. Lever out the light carefully.
- Disconnect the plug connector.
- Replace the defective light bulb.
- Recreate the plug connection.
- Insert the light from the rear and press it forwards up to the stop. ■

Praktik

Praktik

Lashing eyes

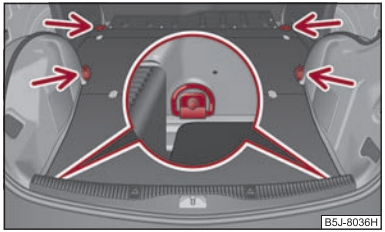


Fig. 173 Loading area: Lashing eyes

Eyes are located on the sides of the loading area for lashing the load to be loaded ⇒ fig. 173.

WARNING

The load to be transported must be fixed in place in such a way that it cannot move during the journey and when braking. ■

Adjustable safety partition behind the front seats

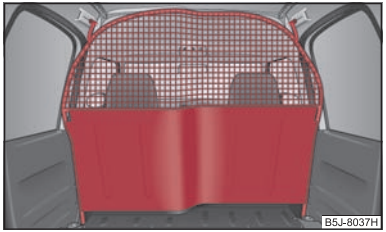


Fig. 174 Adjustable safety partition

The adjustable safety partition behind the front seats can be adjusted up to 100 mm (only valid for certain countries) for improving the comfort for the driver and the front passenger. ■

Fixing of the loading floor

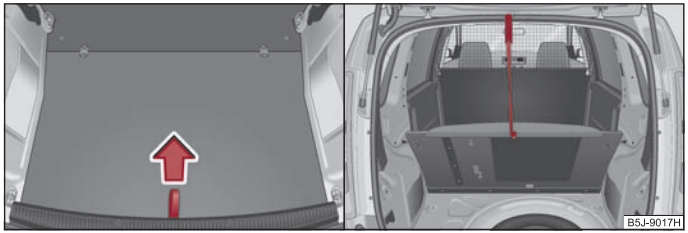


Fig. 175 Loop for raising the loading floor / Fixing the loading floor with a plastic hook

You can fix the loading floor with a hook on the top edge of the boot lid cutout, in order to e.g. reach the spare wheel*.

- Raise the loading floor at the loop ⇒ page 203, fig. 175 and fix it with a plastic hook (it is located below the loading floor edge) to the top edge of the tailgate cutout ⇒ page 203, fig. 175 on the right. ■

Adjustment of the safety partition

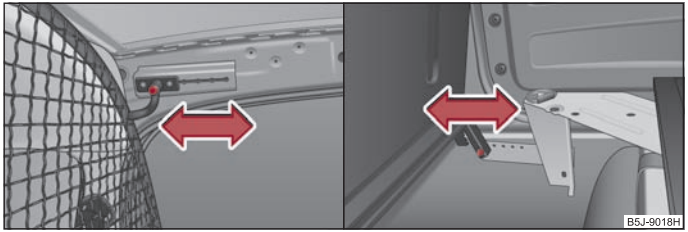


Fig. 176 Top support / bottom support of the safety partition

Only valid for some countries.

- Raise the loading floor part behind the safety partition.
- Unscrew on each side in the upper part of the body one screw ⇒ fig. 176 and in the lower part one screw ⇒ fig. 176.
- Move the safety partition into the desired position. Always ensure that it has the same distance and the same number of holes on both sides top and bottom.
- Screw on each side in the upper part of the body one screw and in the lower part one screw.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. The tightening torque must be 20 Nm.
- Fold the part of the loading floor again towards the bottom. ■

Emergency unlocking of the loading area door

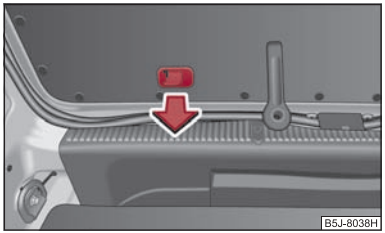


Fig. 177 Emergency unlocking of the loading area door

If there is a fault in the central locking, you can open the loading area door as follows:

- Remove the control cable and pull it.
- Press on the loading area door, in order to open it.
- Press back the control cable again. ■

Technical Data

Technical Data

General information

The details given in the official vehicle registration documents always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual. Please refer to the official vehicle registration documents or consult a specialist garage concerning the engine with which your vehicle is equipped. ■

Used abbreviations

Abbreviation	Importance
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
TSI	Petrol engine with a turbocharger and a direct fuel injection system
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharger and injection system Common Rail
M5	5-speed manual gearbox
DQ7	7-speed automatic gearbox DSG
DPF	Diesel particle filter

■

Performances

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system. ■

Weight

The loading capacity is reduced in line with the range of the special equipment. The unloaden weight contains a fuel tank topped up to 90%. A driver with a weight of 75 kg is also included in the value. ■

Identification details

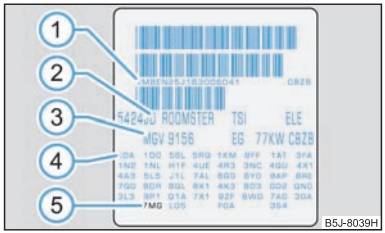


Fig. 178 Vehicle data sticker

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ fig. 178 is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the Service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2. Vehicle type

③ Gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment number, engine output, engine code
④ Partial description of the vehicle
⑤ 7GG, 7MB, 7MG - vehicles with DPF ⇒ page 139

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand shock absorber dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Type plate (production plate)

The type plate is located in the engine compartment at the front on the left hand shock absorber dome.

Sticker on inside of fuel filler flap

The sticker is affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. They contain the following data:

- the prescribed type of fuel;
- tyre size;
- Tyre pressure. ■

Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines

Depending on the range of the special equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, the consumption values which in practice result when using the vehicle can deviate from the indicated values.

Urban traffic

The consumption measurement in urban traffic begins with starting of the cold engine. Afterwards the normal urban traffic is simulated.

Non-urban traffic

For the consumption measurement in non-urban traffic the vehicle, as in daily motoring, is accelerated and braked several times in all gears. The vehicle speed changes within the range from 0 to 120 km/h.

Combined traffic

The consumption value in the combined traffic consists of 37% from the value for the urban traffic and of 63% from the value for the non-urban traffic.

Note

Please note that the information stated in the **official vehicle registration documents** always takes priority. ■

Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK	SCOUT
Length	4214	4213	4240
Width	1684	1684	1695
Width including exterior mirror	1867	1867	1867
Height	1607	1607	1650
Clearance	140	140	141
Wheel base	2608	2608	2620
Track gauge front / rear	1436/1500 (1420/1484)[a)]	1436/1500 (1420/1484)[a)]	1427/1494

[a)] Valid for vehicles, which have factory-fitted 15" wheels.

Engine oil specifications

The grade of engine oil should be selected in accordance with precise specifications.

The engine of your vehicle has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil which you can use throughout the year - except in extreme climatic regions.

You can mix various oils together with each other when refilling with oil. This does not, however, apply for models with flexible service intervals (QG1).

Engine oils are, of course, undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

Specialist garages are informed by Škoda Auto about current changes. We recommend having this oil change undertaken by a specialist garage.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following must be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Engine oil specifications for models with flexible service intervals (QG1)

Petrol engines	Specification	Content[a)]
1.2 ltr./51 kW - EU5 / EU2 DDK	VW 504 00	2,9
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI - EU5	VW 504 00	3,6
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI - EU5	VW 504 00	3,6

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 163, "Check engine oil level".

Diesel engines	Specification	Content[a)]
1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5	VW 507 00	4,3
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5	VW 507 00	4,3

Engine oil specifications for vehicles with fixed service intervals (QG2)

Petrol engines	Specification	Content[a)]
1.2 ltr./51 kW - EU5 / EU2 DDK	VW 502 00	2,9
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI - EU5	VW 502 00	3,6
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI - EU5	VW 502 00	3,6

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 163, "Check engine oil level".

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling.

Diesel engines	Specification	Content[a)]
1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5	VW 507 00	4,3
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5	VW 507 00	4,3

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

Caution

Only the above-mentioned oils may be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals (QG1). We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, you must top up only once engine oil complying with Specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or Specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) to maximum 0.5 litres. You must not use other engine oils - risk of engine damage!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle. Consequently, you will always have the correct engine oil for refilling.
- We recommend using a preservative from the Škoda original accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

- For further information - see Service shedule.

1.2 ltr./51 kW - EU5 / EU2 DDK

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	51/5400
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	112/3000
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		3/1198

Performances

Maximum speed	km/h	159
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	15,9

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

Urban	8,2
Non-urban	5,0
Combination	6,2
CO_2 emission - combination	143

Weight (in kg)

	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Permissible gross weight	1655/1760[a)]	1645/1745[b)]
Unloaden weight ready for work	1200/1215[a)]	1170/1180[b)]
Loading capacity[c)]	530/620[a)]	550/640[b)]
Loading capacity when using the TLC[c)]	480	465
Permissible front axle load	920/960[a)]	920
Permissible rear axle load	900/1000[a)]	900/1000[b)]
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	(700/450)[d)] (900/450)[e)]	(700/450)[d)] (900/450)[e)]

a) Vehicles of category N1.
b) Valid for vehicles, which have factory-fitted 15" wheels.
c) Depending on special equipment.
d) Uphills up to 12%
e) Uphills up to 8%

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI - EU5

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	63/4800
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	160/1500 - 3500
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1197

Performances

Maximum speed	km/h	172
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	12,6

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

Urban	7,1
Non-urban	4,9
Combination	5,7
CO_2 emission - combination	134

Weight (in kg)

	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Permissible gross weight	1676/1782[a)]	1666/1766[b)]
Unloaden weight ready for work	1221/1237[a)]	1191/1201[b)]
Loading capacity[c)]	530/620[a)]	550/640[b)]
Loading capacity when using the TLC[c)]	480	465
Permissible front axle load	920/960[a)]	920/920[b)]
Permissible rear axle load	900/1000[a)]	900/1000[b)]
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	(900/450)[d)] (1100/450)[e)]	(900/450)[d)] (1100/450)[e)]

a) Vehicles of category N1.
b) Valid for vehicles, which have factory-fitted 15" wheels.
c) Depending on special equipment.
d) Uphills up to 12%
e) Uphills up to 8%

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI - EU5

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	77/5000
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	175/1550 - 4100
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1197

Performances

		M5	DQ7
Maximum speed	km/h	184	184
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	10,9	11,0

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

	M5	**DQ7**
Urban	7,1	7,2
Non-urban	4,9	4,8
Combination	5,7	5,7
CO_2 emission - combination	134	134

Weight (in kg)

	M5	DQ7
Permissible gross weight	1692/1782[a)]	1726/1816[a)]
Unloaden weight ready for work	1237	1271
Loading capacity[b)]	530/620[a)]	530/620[a)]
Loading capacity when using the TLC[b)]	480	480
Permissible front axle load	960	960
Permissible rear axle load	900/1000[a)]	900/1000[a)]
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	(900/450) [c)] (1100/450)[d)]	(900/450)[c)] (1100/450)[d)]

a) Vehicles of category N1.
b) Depending on special equipment.
c) Uphills up to 12%
d) Uphills up to 8%

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	66/4200
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	230/1500 - 2500
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1598

Performances

Maximum speed	km/h	171
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	13,3

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

Urban	5,7
Non-urban	4,1
Combination	4,7
CO_2 emission - combination	124

Weight (in kg)

	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Permissible gross weight	1777/1867[a)]	1857
Unloaden weight ready for work	1322	1292
Loading capacity[b)]	530/620[a)]	640
Loading capacity when using the TLC[b)]	480	465
Permissible front axle load	960	960
Permissible rear axle load	900/1000[a)]	1000
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	(1200/450)[c)] (1200/450)[d)]	(1200/450)[c)] (1200/450)[d)]

a) Vehicles of category N1.
b) Depending on special equipment.
c) Uphills up to 12%
d) Uphills up to 8%

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR DPF - EU5

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	77/4400
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	250/1500 - 2500
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1598

Performances

Maximum speed	km/h	181
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	11,5

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

Urban	5,7
Non-urban	4,1
Combination	4,7
CO_2 emission - combination	124

Weight (in kg)

Permissible gross weight	1777
Unloaden weight ready for work	1322
Loading capacity[a)]	530
Loading capacity when using the TLC[a)]	480
Permissible front axle load	960
Permissible rear axle load	900
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	(1200/450)[b)] (1200/450)[c)]

a) Depending on special equipment.
b) Uphills up to 12%
c) Uphills up to 8%

Index

A

Abroad 146
ABS 136
  Warning light 31
Accessories 179
Adjusting seats 57, 61, 110
Adjusting the seat backrest 60
Adjusting the steering wheel 87
Air conditioning system 81
Airbag 118
  Deployment 119
  Front airbag 119
  Head airbag 123
  Side airbag 121
  Warning light 32
Airbag system 118
  Warning light 32
Alarm 41
Alternator
  Warning light 27
Antilock brake system 136
Antilock brake system (ABS)
  Warning light 31
Anti-theft alarm system 41
Ashtray 72
Auto Check Control 23
Auto Computer 18
Automatic gearbox 94
  Emergency programme 98
  Kickdown 97
  Selector lever-emergency unlocking 98
  Tiptronic 98
Automatic vehicle wash systems 151
Automatic wiper/washer system 53
AUX-IN 107
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 146

B

Battery 27, 168
  change 171
  Charge 171
  Inspecting the electrolyte level 170
  Operation in winter 171
Before setting off 109
Belt tensioner 116
Belt tensioners 116
Belts 113
Bicycle holder 68
Bonnet 14, 161
Boot lid 39
  Lighting 52
  Warning light 29
Brake
  Handbrake 90
Brake booster 136
Brake fluid 167
Brake system
  Warning light 31
Brakes 135
Bulbs 196
  Warning light 27
Button on the driver's door
  Central locking system 38
  Electrical power windows 43

C

Car state 23
Catalytic converter 142
Central locking system 36
  lock 37
  unlock 37
Changing a wheel 183
Changing wheels around 175
Charging the battery 171
  Warning light 27
Check engine oil level 163
Child safety 126
  Side airbag 128
Child safety lock 35
Child safety seat
  on the front passenger seat 127
  Safety information 126
Child seat 128
  Classification into groups 128
  ISOFIX system 131

Children and safety 126
Chrome parts 153
Cigarette lighter 72
Cleaning 151
Climatronic
Defrosting windows 86
Setting temperature 86
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 84
Clock 18
Clothes hooks 77
Cockpit
General view 9
Compartments 73
Computer 18
Convenience operation 44
Converting/masking over headlights 146
Coolant 165
replenishing 166
Warning light 28
Coolant level
Warning light 28
Coolant quantity
Warning light 28
Coolant temperature gauge 16
Coolant temperature/coolant level
Warning light 28
Cornering light 47
Correct seated position 110
Counter for distance driven 17
Cruise control system 92
Warning light 32
Cup holder
front 71
rear 71

D

Dash panel insert 15
Daylight driving lights 46, 198
Deactivating an airbag 124
Defrosting rear window 52
De-icing the windows 153
Diesel 158
Diesel engines
Starting the engine 89
Diesel particle filter 139
Warning light 32
Digital clock 18
Direction indicators 50
Warning light 26
Display 22
Displays 15
Distance driven 17
Door
Child safety lock 35
Warning light 29
Door, luggage compartment door and bonnet ajar warning 23
Driving economically 142
Driving time 20

E

EDL 134
Electrical power windows 43
Electrically adjustable rear mirror 55
Electronic Differential Lock 134
Warning light 31
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 134
Electronic immobiliser 35
Electronic stability programme (ESP) 133
Warning light 30
Emergency locking of the door 38
Engine
starting 88
switching off 89
Engine compartment
Safety information 162
Engine electronics
Warning light 27
Engine oil 163
Change 164
check 163
replenishing 164
Warning light 28
Engine revolutions counter 15
Environment 142
Environmental compatibility 142, 145
ESP 133
Warning light 30
Exhaust gas
Warning light 29
Exhaust gas inspection
Warning light 29
Explanations 6
Exterior mirror 55

Exterior mirror heater 55

F

Fastening elements 63
First-aid box 181
Fixing net 64
Fog lights 48, 198
  Warning light 27
Fog lights with the function CORNER 48
Folding seats forwards 60
Force limiter of the power windows 44
Front airbag 119
Front armrest 75
Front headlight 197
Fuel 158
  Diesel fuel 158
  Fuel gauge 16
  Petrol 158
  Warning light 28
Fuel consumption 20, 142
  Saving energy 142
Fuel gauge 16
Fuel reserve
  Warning light 28
Full wheel trim 184
Fuse
  Assignment 192
Fuses 191

G

Gearbox
  mechanical 90
General view
  Cockpit 9
Glow plug system 89
  Warning light 28
GSM 101

H

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function 47
Handbrake 90
Hazard warning light system 49
  Warning light 26
Head airbag 123
Head restraint 58
Headlight cleaning system 54
Headlight flasher 50
Headlights
  Fog lights 48
  Headlight cleaning system 54
Heated windscreen washer nozzles 53
Heating 79
Heating the front seats 59
Horn 9

I

Ignition 87
Ignition lock 87
Immobiliser 35
Information display 22
Instrument cluster 15
Interior light
  Luggage compartment 52
Interior lighting
  front 51
  rear 51
Interior monitor 42
Intermittent wiping 53
ISOFIX 131
ISOFIX system 131

J

Jacking points 185
Jump-starting 186, 187

K

Key 34

L

Lashing eyes 63
Leather care 156
Lifting jack 181
Lighting of the interior of the vehicle
  front 51
  rear 51
Lights
  converting/masking over 146
  Range adjustment 49

switching on and off 46
Warning lights 25
Lights and Visibility 49
Liquid in reservoir for windscreen washer system
Warning light 29
Loading 62
Lock
Central locking system 37
lock
Central locking system 37
Locking 35, 36
Remote control 40
Locking and unlocking from inside 38
Locking of the door
in an emergency 38
Low beam 46, 197
Warning light 26
Luggage compartment 62
Folding hooks 64
Lashing eyes 63
Luggage compartment - variable loading floor . . . 66

M

Main beam 46, 50, 197
Warning light 26
Manual gearbox 90
Manual shifting of gears 90
MDI 107
Memory for the on-board computer 19
Mobile phone 101
Connection with the handsfree-system 102
Motoring abroad 146
Headlights 146
Multifunction steering wheel 100
Multi-functional indicator 18

N

New tyres 141

O

Oil 163
Change 164
Warning light 28
Oil change 164
Oil dipstick 163
Onboard computer 18
Opening a single door 36
Opening the door
Warning light 29
Operation in winter
Battery 171
Biodiesel 159
De-icing windows 153
Snow chains 177
Outside temperature 20
Overview of the engine compartment 163

P

Paint 153
Paint damage 153
Panorama roof 45
Parking 91
Parking aid 91
Parking light 50
Parking ticket holder 72
Passive Safety 109
Pedals 62
Petrol 158
Petrol engines
Starting the engine 89
Polishing 153
Power socket 73
Power steering 137
Warning light 27
Power windows 43
Central locking system 44
Operational faults 44

R

Radiator fan 167
Raise vehicle 185
Range 21
Rear armrest 62
Rear fog light 48
Warning light 27
Rear mirror 55
Rear seats 59
Rear window heater 52
Recharge battery 171
Recirculated air mode 78
Refuelling 159

Remote control 40
Synchronisation process 41
Removing seats 60
Replacing bulbs 196
Replacing fuses 191
Replacing the wiper blades 54
Roof aerial 151
Running in the car 141

S

Safe securing 36
Safety 109
Safety information
Engine compartment 162
Saving electrical energy 142
Seat belt height adjuster 115
Seat belt warning light 115
Seat belts 113
Cleaning 157
fastening 115
Height adjustment 115
Safety information 114
taking off 116
Warning light 33
Seats 57
Heating 59
Selector lever 95
Selector lever positions 95
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 98
Service Display 17
Service Interval Display 17
Setting temperature
Air conditioning system 82
Heating 79
Setting the clock 18
Shifting 90
Side airbag 121
Side lights 46
Snow chains 177
Spare wheel 182
Speedometer 16
Stability programme (ESP) 133
Starting the engine 88
Diesel engines 89
Petrol engines 89
Static separation net 65
Steering force assistance 137
Storage compartment
Lighting 51
Storage compartments 73
Storage facilities 73
Sun visors 52
Switching lights on and off 46
Switching off the engine 89

T

Taking care of your vehicle 151
TCS 134
Warning light 30
Telephone 101
Temperature
outside 20
the first 1 500 kilometres 141
The roof luggage rack system 70
Tiptronic 94
Tool 181
Tourist light 47
Towing a trailer 148
Towing eye
front 189
rear 189
Towing protection monitoring 42
towing vehicle 188
Tow-starting 188
Tow-starting and towing vehicle
Automatic gearbox 99
Traction control system (TCS) 134
Warning light 30
Trailer 148
General Maintenance 148
Transporting children 126
Tread depth 174
Turn signal light 198
Turn signal lights 50
Warning light 26
Two-way radio systems 101
Tyre 173
Tyre inflation pressure
Warning light 30
Tyre pressure monitoring system 138
Tyre repair kit 182
Tyres
Winter tyres 177

U

Underbody protection 155
Unidirectional tyres 177
Unlocking 36
    Remote control 40
Uphill Start Assist 137

V

Vanity mirror 52
Vehicle tool kit 181
Visors 52

W

Warning lights 25
Warning symbols 25
Warning triangle 181
Washing 151
    with a high-pressure cleaner 152
Washing the vehicle 151
Washing vehicle by hand 152
Wax treatment 152
Wheel
    Changing 183
    Spare wheel 182
Wheel bolts 176
    Safety 186
    slackening and tightening 185
Wheel bolts lock 186
Wheel trim 173, 184
Wheels 173
Window 43
Windows
    de-icing 153
Windscreen washer nozzles 53
Windscreen Wiper and Washer System
    Warning light 29
Windshield washer fluid reservoir 172
    Warning light 29
Windshield washer system 172
Windshield wiper 53
Winter tyres 177
Wiper blades
    Replacing the wiper blades 54

Škoda Auto pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about scope of delivery, appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, fuel consumption, standards and functions of the vehicle is only correct at the time of publication. Certain items of equipment might only be installed later on (information given by the local Škoda Service Partner) or only envisaged for particular markets. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of Škoda Auto.

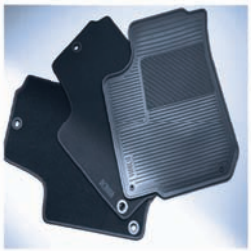
Škoda Auto expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

We reserve the right to make changes to this document.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2010

SIMPLY CLEVER



ŠkodaService
ŠkodaGenuine Parts
ŠkodaGenuine Accessories

How you can contribute to a cleaner environment

The fuel consumption of your Škoda - and thus the level of pollutants contained in the exhaust - is also determined by how you drive.

The noise level and wear and tear are also influenced by how you personally handle your vehicle. This Owner's Manual tells you how to drive your Škoda to achieve the minimum impact on the environment, and how to save money at the same time. Look up „Environment“ in the Index to find out more.

Please also refer to all the texts identified with a in this Owner's Manual.

Make your contribution - for the sake of the environment.

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Roomster anglicky 03.10
S80.5610.05.20
5J7 012 003 DM